

MIDDLE HIGH GERMAN SERIES • VOLUME 17

TRISTAN

GOTTFRIED VON STRASSBURG

Tristan

Part One: The Hunt and the Harp

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation
preserving the original word order

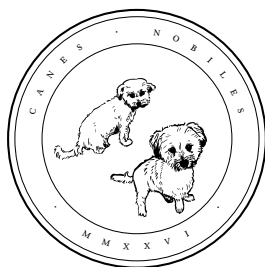


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hensch
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 17 of the Canes Nobiles Middle High German interlinear texts

The Middle High German text follows Gottfried von Straßburg,
Tristan, herausgegeben von Karl Marold, Erster Teil:

Text (Leipzig: Eduard Avenarius, 1906), verses 1 to 5866

Set from a page scan of the 1906 printing

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hensch
Artwork by Esther Steves

The verses are numbered as Friedrich Ranke numbers them (1930), every fifth verse in the outer margin; Marold's own count agrees to verse 239 and differs by two to four after it. The six verses Marold brackets as a later addition, which Ranke omits, are printed in their brackets and lettered after 5266. The paragraphs are the edition's own indented breaks; the reading sections and their English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

I · The Prologue	7
II · Thomas of Britain	15
III · Riwalin of Parmenie	22
IV · Riwalin Comes to Cornwall	32
V · The May Festival	44
VI · Blanscheflur's Greeting	53
VII · Blanscheflur's Lament	65
VIII · The Lovers' Glances and the War	75
IX · The Visit to the Wounded	83
X · The Summons Home	92
XI · The Flight to Parmenie	103
XII · The Death of Blanscheflur	115
XIII · Rual and Floraete	125
XIV · Tristan's Schooling	137

XV · The Norwegian Merchants	144
XVI · The Storm	156
XVII · Alone in Cornwall	164
XVIII · The Pilgrims	173
XIX · The Breaking of the Hart	182
XX · The Fourchie and the Curee	192
XXI · The Ride to Tintajoel	202
XXII · The Hunt Comes to Court	211
XXIII · Master of the Hunt	221
XXIV · The Harper	229
XXV · The Second Lay	236
XXVI · Rual's Search	245
XXVII · Rual Finds Tristan	255
XXVIII · Rual's Tale	266
XXIX · The Ring	278
XXX · The Companions' Clothing	290
XXXI · The Poets	299
XXXII · The Invocation	311
XXXIII · The Knighting	325
XXXIV · The Return to Parmenie	333
XXXV · The Death of Morgan	344
XXXVI · Rual's Rescue	357
XXXVII · The Farewell to Parmenie	367

The Prologue

I

The poet praises the man who can judge good and evil and weigh each person at his worth, and laments those who call good evil. He writes for the noble hearts, who carry sweet and bitter, joy and sorrow, in one heart, not for the world that wants only pleasure. A yearning tale eases a yearner's hour; though such tales deepen yearning, love's sorrow is so full of joy that no noble heart forgoes it. So he will tell of two noble lovers, Tristan and Isolde.

Gedenkt man ir ze guote niht,

(If)-remembers one them to good not,

von den der werlde guot geschiht,

from whom to-the world good happens,

sô wære ez allez alse niht,

so would-be it all as nothing,

swaz guotes in der werlde geschiht.

whatever of-good in the world happens.

Der guote man swaz der in guot

The good man whatever he in good

und niwan der werlt ze guote tuot,

and only for-the world to good does,

swer daz iht anders wan in guot

whoever that at-all otherwise than in good

vernemen wil, der missetuot.

understand will, be does-wrong.

Ich hære ez velschen harte vil,

I hear it disparage very much,

daz man doch gerne haben wil:

which one yet gladly have wants:

dâ ist des lützelzen ze vil,

there is of-the little too much,

dâ wil man, des man niht enwil.

there wants one, what one not wants.

5

10

Ez zimet dem man ze lobene wol,

It befits the man to praise well,

des er iedoch bedürfen sol,

what he yet need shall,

15 und lâze ez ime gevallen wol,

and let it him please well,

die wîle ez ime gevallen sol.

the while it him please shall.

Tiure unde wert ist mir der man,

Precious and worthy is to-me the man,

der guot und übel betrahten kan,

who good and ill consider can,

der mich und iegelichen man

who me and every man

20 nâch sînem werde erkennen kan.

according-to his worth recognize can.

Êre unde lop diu schephent list,

Honor and praise they create art,

dâ list ze lobe geschaffen ist:

where art to praise created is:

swâ er mit lobe geblüemet ist,

wherever it with praise flowered is,

dâ blüet aller slahte list.

there blooms of-all kinds art.

25 Rehte als daz dinc zunruoche gât,

Just as the thing to-neglect goes,

daz lobes noch êre niht enhât,

that of-praise nor honor not has,

als liebet daz, daz êre hât

so pleases that, which honor has

und sînes lobes niht irre gât.

and of-its praise not astray goes.

- Ir ist sô vil, die des nu pflegent,
Of-them is so many, who that now practice,
- daz si daz guote ze übele wegent, 30
that they the good to ill weigh,
- daz übel wider ze guote wegent:
the ill back to good weigh:
- die pflegent niht, si widerpflegent
they tend not, they counter-tend
- Chunst unde nâhe sehender sin,
Art and closely seeing mind,
- swie wol diu schînen under in,
however well they shine among them,
- geherberget nît zuo zin, 35
(if)-lodges envy with to-them,
- er leschet kunst unde sin.
it quenches art and mind.
- Hei, tugent, wie smal sint dîne stege,
Hei, virtue, how narrow are thy paths,
- wie kumberlîch sint dîne wege!
how toilsome are thy ways!
- die dîne stege, die dîne wege,
the thy paths, the thy ways,
- wol ime, der sî wege unde stege! 40
well to-him, who them travels and treads!
- Trîbe ich die zît vergebene hin,
(If)-pass I the time in-vain away,
- sô zîtec ich ze lebene bin,
so ripe I for living am,
- sone vare ich in der werlt sus hin
so fare I in the world thus along
- niht sô gewerldet alse ich bin.
not so worlded as I am.

45 Ich hân mir eine unmüezekeit
I have for-myself an occupation

der werlt ze liebe vür geleit
for-the world to pleasure forth laid

und edelen herzen zeiner hage:
and to-noble hearts for-a delight:

den herzen den ich herze trage,
to-the hearts to-which I heart bear,

der werlde in die mîn herze siht.
to-the world into which my heart sees.

50 ine meine ir aller werlde niht
I mean their of-all world not

als die, von der ich høre sagen,
as that, of which I hear say,

diu keine swære müge getragen
that no grief may bear

und niwan in fröuden welle sweben:
and only in joys wishes hover:

die lâze ouch got mit fröuden leben!
them let also God with joys live!

55 der werlde und diseme lebene
to-the world and to-this life

enkumt mîn rede niht ebene:
comes my speech not even:

ir leben und mînez zweigent sich.
their life and mine divide themselves.

ein ander werlt die meine ich,
an other world that mean I,

diu sament in eime herzen treit
which together in one heart bears

60 ir süeze sûr, ir liebez leit,
its sweet sour, its dear sorrow,

ir herzeliep, ir senede nôt,
its heart's-joy, its yearning distress,

ir liebez leben, ir leiden tôt,

its dear life, its sorrowful death,

ir lieben tôt, ir leidez leben.

its dear death, its sorrowful life.

dem lebene sî mîn leben ergeben,

to-that life be my life given,

der werlt wil ich gewerldet wesen,

to-that world will I worlded be,

65

mit ir verderben oder genesen.

with it perish or be-saved.

ich bin mit ir biz her beliben

I am with it until now remained

und hân mit ir die tage vertriben,

and have with it the days passed,

die mir ûf nâhe gêndem leben

that to-me in near going life

lêre unde geleite solten geben.

teaching and guidance should give.

70

der hân ich mîne unmuëzekeit

to-it have I my occupation

ze kurzewîle vür geleit,

for pastime forth laid,

daz sî mit mînem mære

that it with my tale

ir nâhe gênde swære

its near going grief

ze halber senfte bringe,

to half ease bring,

75

ir nôt dâ mite geringe.

its distress there with lighten.

wan swer des iht vor ougen hât,

for whoever of-it anything before eyes has,

dâ mite der muot zunmuoze gât,

there with the spirit to-occupation goes,

daz entsorget sorgehaften muot,
that unburdens care-ridden spirit,

- 80 daz ist ze herzesorgen guot.
that is for heart-cares good.

ir aller volge diu ist dar an:
their of-all consent it is there on:

swâ sô der müezige man
wherever so the idle man

mit senedem schaden sî überladen,
with yearning harm be overladen,

dâ mêre muoze seneden schaden.
there increases idleness yearning harm.

- 85 bî senedem leide müezekeit,
by yearning sorrow idleness,

dâ wahset iemer senede leit.
there grows ever yearning sorrow.

durch daz ist guot, swer herzeklage
for that is good, whoever heart's-lament

und senede nôt ze herzen trage,
and yearning distress to heart bear,

daz er mit allem ruoche
that he with all care

- 90 dem lîbe unmuoze suoche:
for-the body occupation seek:

dâ mite sô müezeget der muot
there with so is-eased the spirit

und ist dem muote ein michel guot;
and is for-the spirit a great good;

und gerâte ich niemer doch dar an,
and advise I never yet there on,

daz iemer liebe gernder man
that ever love desiring man

- 95 dekeine solhe unmuoze im neme,
any such occupation to-himself take,

diu reiner liebe missezeme.

that to-pure love ill-befits.

ein senelîchez mære

a yearning tale

daz trîbe ein senedære

that pursue a yearner

mit herzen und mit munde

with heart and with mouth

und senfte sô die stunde.

and ease so the hour.

100

nu ist aber einer jehe ze vil,

now is yet of-one saying too much,

der ich vil nâch gevolgen wil:

which I very nearly follow will:

der senede muot, sô der ie mê

the yearning spirit, so it ever more

mit seneden mæren umbe gê,

with yearning tales about go,

sô sîner swære ie mêre sî.

so of-its grief ever more be.

105

der selben jehe der stüende ich bî,

the same saying it would-stand I by,

wan ein dinc daz mir widerstât:

but one thing that me opposes:

swer inneclîche liebe hât,

whoever inward love has,

doch ez im wê von herzen tuo,

though it him woe from heart do,

daz herze stât doch ie dar zuo.

the heart stands yet ever there to.

110

der inneclîche minnenmuot,

the inward love-spirit,

sô der in sîner senegluot

so it in its yearning-glow

ie mêre und mêre brinnet,

ever more and more burns,

sô er ie sêrer minnet.

so it ever sorer loves.

115 diz leit ist liebes alse vol,

this sorrow is of-joy so full,

daz übel daz tuot sô herzewol,

the ill it does so heart-well,

daz es kein edel herze enbirt,

that it no noble heart foregoes,

sît ez hie von geherzet wirt.

since it here from heartened becomes.

ich weiz ez wârez als den tôt

I know it true as the death

120 und erkenne ez bî der selben nôt:

and recognize it by the same distress:

der edele senedære

the noble yearner

der minnet senediu mære.

he loves yearning tales.

von diu swer seneder mære ger,

from that whoever of-yearning tales desires,

der envar niht verrer danne her;

he fare not farther than here;

125 ich wil in wol bemæren

I will him well tale-tell

von edelen senedæren,

of noble yearners,

die reine sene wol tâten schîn:

who pure yearning well made manifest:

ein senedære und ein senedærîn,

a yearner and a yearning-woman,

ein man ein wîp, ein wîp ein man,
a man a woman, a woman a man,

Tristan Isolt, Isolt Tristan.

Tristan Isolde, Isolde Tristan.

130

Thomas of Britain

II

Many have told of Tristan, but few rightly; to follow Thomas of Britain, who read the lives of the lords in Breton books, the poet searched Romance and Latin books until he found the true account. He offers it to noble hearts as occupation: love, faithfulness, and honor please nowhere so well as where heart's love and heart's sorrow are told, and joy and sorrow were never parted in love. The dead lovers live on in their story, which is bread to noble hearts.

Ich weiz wol, ir ist vil gewesen,

I know well, of-them is many been,

die von Tristande hânt gelesen;

who of Tristan have read;

und ist ir doch niht vil gewesen,

and is of-them yet not many been,

die von im rehte haben gelesen.

who of him rightly have read.

Tuon aber ich diu gelîche nuo

(If)-do however I the like now

und schephe mîniu wort dar zuo,

and shape my words there to,

daz mir ir iegelîches sage

that to-me of-them each-one's telling

von disem mære missehage,

of this tale displease,

so wûrbe ich anders danne ich sol,

so would-act I otherwise than I shall,

135

140 ich entuon es niht; si sprâchen wol
I do it not; they spoke well

und niwan ûz edelem muote
and only from noble spirit

mir unde der werlt ze guote.
for-me and for-the world to good.

binamen si tâten ez in guot;
truly they did it in good;

und swaz der man in guot getuot,
and whatever the man in good does,

145 daz ist ouch guot und wol getân.
that is also good and well done.

aber als ich gesprochen hân,
however as I spoken have,

daz sî niht rehte haben gelesen,
that they not rightly have read,

daz ist, als ich iu sage, gewesen:
that is, as I to-you say, been:

sine sprâchen in der rihte niht,
they spoke in the right-way not,

150 als Thômas von Britanje giht,
as Thomas of Britain says,

der âventiure meister was
who of-adventure master was

und an britûnschen buochen las
and in Breton books read

aller der lanthêrren leben
of-all the land-lords life

und ez uns ze kûnde hât gegeben.
and it to-us to knowledge has given.

Als der von Tristande seit, 155
As he of Tristan tells,
 die rihte und die wârheit
the right-way and the truth
 begunde ich sêre suochen
began I sorely seek
 in beider hande buochen
in of-both kinds books
 walschen und latînen,
Romance and Latin,
 und begunde mich des pînen, 160
and began myself of-it strive,
 daz ich in sîner rihte
that I in his right-way
 rihte dise tihte.
direct this poem.
 sus treib ich manege suoche,
thus pursued I many-a search,
 unz ich an eime buoche
until I in a book
 alle sîne jehe gelas, 165
all his saying read,
 wie dirre âventiure was.
how of-this adventure was.
 waz aber mîn lesen dô wære
what however my reading then were
 von disem senemære,
of this yearning-tale,
 daz lege ich mîner willekûr
that lay I of-my free-will
 allen edelen herzen vûr, 170
to-all noble hearts before,
 daz sî dâ mite unmüezic wesen:
that they there with occupied be:

ez ist in sêre guot gelesen.

it is to-them sorely good read.

guot? jâ, innecliche guot.

good? yes, inwardly good.

ez liebet liebe und edelet muot,

it endears love and ennobles spirit,

175 ez stätet triuwe und tugendet leben,

it steadies faithfulness and makes-virtuous life,

ez kan wol lebene tugende geben;

it can well to-life virtues give;

wan swâ man hœret oder list,

for wherever one hears or reads,

daz von sô reinen triuwen ist,

what of such pure faithfulness is,

dâ liebent dem getriuwen man

there endear-themselves to-the faithful man

180 triuwe und ander tugende van.

faithfulness and other virtues from-it.

liebe, triuwe, stäter muot,

love, faithfulness, constant spirit,

êre und ander manic guot,

honor and other many-a good,

daz geliebet niemer anderswâ

that pleases never elsewhere

sô sêre noch sô wol sô dâ,

so sorely nor so well as there,

185 dâ man von herzeliebe saget

where one of heart's-love tells

und herzeleit ûz liebe klaget.

and heart's-sorrow from love laments.

liebe ist ein alsô sælic dinc,

love is a so blessed thing,

ein alsô sæleclîch gerinc,

a so blessed striving,

daz nieman âne ir lêre

that no-one without its teaching

noch tugende hât noch êre.

neither virtue has nor honor.

190

sô manec wert leben, sô liebe frumet,

so many-a worthy life, as love furthers,

sô vil sô tugende von ir kumet,

so much as virtue from it comes,

owê daz allez, daz der lebet,

alas that all, that there lives,

nâch herzeliebe niht enstrebet,

after heart's-love not strives,

daz ich sô lützel vinde der,

that I so few find of-those,

195

die lûterlîche herzege

who pure heart's-desire

durch friunt ze herzen wellen tragen

for friend to heart will bear

niwan durch daz vil arme klagen,

only for the very poor lamenting,

daz hie bî ze etelicher zît

that here by at some time

verborgen in dem herzen lît.

hidden in the heart lies.

200

War umbe enlîte ein edeler muot

What for suffered a noble spirit

niht gerne ein übel durch tûsent guot,

not gladly an ill for thousand good,

durch manege fröude ein ungemach?

for many-a joy a discomfort?

swem nie von liebe leit geschach,

to-whom never from love sorrow happened,

dem geschach ouch lieb von liebe nie.

to-him happened also joy from love never.

205

liep unde leit diu wâren ie
joy and sorrow they were ever

an minnen ungescheiden.
in love unparted.

man muoz mit disen beiden
one must with these both

êre unde lop erwerben
honor and praise win

210 oder âne sî verderben.
or without them perish.

von den diz senemære seit
of whom this yearning-tale tells

und hæten die durch liebe leit,
and had they for love sorrow,

durch herzewunne senedez klagen
for heart's-bliss yearning lament

in einem herzen niht getragen,
in one heart not borne,

215 sone wære ir name und ir geschiht
so would-be their name and their story

sô manegem edelen herzen niht
to-so many noble hearts not

ze sælden noch ze liebe komen.
to fortune nor to joy come.

uns ist noch hiute lieb vernomen,
to-us is still today dear heard,

süeze und iemer niuwe,
sweet and ever new,

220 ir inneclîchiu triuwe,
their inward faithfulness,

ir lieb, ir leit, ir wunne, ir nôt;
their joy, their sorrow, their bliss, their distress;

al eine und sîn si lange tôt,
even though and be they long dead,

ir sūezer name der lebet iedoch,
their sweet name it lives yet,

und sol ir tât der werlde noch
and shall their death to-the world still

ze guote lange und iemer leben,
to good long and ever live,

225

den triuwe gernden triuwe geben,
to-the faithfulness desiring faithfulness give,

den êre gernden êre:
to-the honor desiring honor:

ir tât muoz iemer mêre
their death must ever more

uns lebenden leben und niuwe wesen;
to-us living live and new be;

wan swâ man noch hœret lesen
for wherever one still hears read

230

ir triuwe, ir triuwen reinekeit,
their faithfulness, their faithfulness's purity,

ir herzeliep, ir herzeleit,
their heart's-joy, their heart's-sorrow,

Deist aller edelen herzen brôt.
That-is of-all noble hearts bread.

hie mite sô lebet ir beider tât.
here with so lives their of-both death.

wir lesen ir leben, wir lesen ir tât,
we read their life, we read their death,

235

unde ist uns daz sūeze also brôt.
and is to-us that sweet as bread.

Ir leben, ir tât sint unser brôt.
Their life, their death are our bread.

sus lebet ir leben, sus lebet ir tât.
thus lives their life, thus lives their death.

sus lebent si noch und sint doch tôt,
thus live they still and are yet dead,

240 und ist ir tôt der lebenden brôt.
and is their death the living's bread.

Und swer nu ger, daz man im sage
And whoever now desire, that one him tell

ir leben, ir tôt, ir fröude, ir klage,
their life, their death, their joy, their lament,

der biete herze und ôren her:
he offer heart and ears hither:

er vindet alle sîne ger.
he finds all his desire.

Riwalin of Parmenie

III

Riwalin, a young lord of Parmenie, is rich, handsome, loyal, and bold, but his youth runs to arrogance, and he repays every injury with force. The poet warns that a man who can bear no harm gathers harms. Riwalin, also called Kanelengres, holds his land from the Breton duke Morgan. He attacks Morgan, burns and plunders, and presses him so hard in his fortresses that Morgan sues for a year's truce, sworn with pledges; Riwalin rewards his knights and sends them home.

245 Ein hêrre in Parmenie was,
A lord in Parmenie was,
 der jâre ein kint, als ich ez las:
of-the years a child, as I it read:

der was, als uns diu wârheit
he was, as to-us the truth

an sîner âventiure seit,
in his adventure says,

wol an gebürte kûnege genôz,
well in birth to-kings equal,

an lande fürsten ebengrôz, 250
in land to-princes even-great,
 des lîbes schœne und wunneclîch,
of-the body fair and delightful,
 getriuwe, küene, milte, rîch;
faithful, bold, generous, rich;
 und den er fröude solte tragen,
and to-whom he joy should bear,
 den was der hêrre in sînen tagen
to-them was the lord in his days
 ein fröude berndiu sunne. 255
a joy bearing sun.
 er was der werlde ein wunne,
he was for-the world a bliss,
 der ritterschefte ein lêre,
for-the knight-hood a teaching,
 sîner mâge ein êre,
for-his kinsmen an honor,
 sînes landes ein zuoversiht.
for-his land a confidence.
 an ime brast al der tugende niht, 260
in him lacked all of-the virtues not,
 der hêrre haben solde,
which a-lord have should,
 wan daz er ze verre wolde
except that he too far would
 in sînes herzen luften sweben
in his heart's airs hover
 und niwan nâch sînem willen leben;
and only after his will live;
 daz ime ouch sît ze leide ergie. 265
which to-him also later to sorrow befell.
 wan leider diz ist und was ie:
for alas this is and was ever:

ûfgêndiu jugent und vollez guot,
rising youth and full goods,

diu zwei die füerent übermuot.
the two they lead arrogance.

vertragen, daz doch vil manic man
bear, which yet very many-a man

270 in michelem gewalte kan,
in great power can,

dar an gedâhte er selten;
there on thought he seldom;

übel mit übele gelten,
ill with ill repay,

kraft erzeigen wider kraft:
strength show against strength:

dar zuo was er gedanchaft.
there to was he minded.

275 Nu enloufet ez die lenge niht,
Now runs it the length not,

der allez daz, daz ime geschiht,
who all that, which to-him happens,

mit Karles lôte gelten wil.
with Charles's weight repay wants.

weiz got, der man muoz harte vil
knows God, the man must very much

an disem borge übersehen
in this borrowing overlook

280 oder ime muoz dicke schade geschehen.
or to-him must often harm happen.

swer keinen schaden vertragen kan,
whoever no harm bear can,

dâ wahsent dicke schaden an,
there grow often harms on,

und ist ein veiclîcher site.
and is a fatal custom.

hie vâhet man den bern mite,

here catches one the bear with,

der richet einzele schaden,

who avenges single harms,

285

unz er mit schaden wirt beladen.

until he with harms becomes laden.

ich wæne ouch ime alsam geschach,

I think also to-him likewise happened,

wan er sich alse vil gerach,

for he himself as much avenged,

biz er den schaden dar an genam.

until he the harm there on took.

daz aber er ie ze schaden kam,

that however he ever to harm came,

290

daz enkam von archeite niht,

that came from malice not,

dâ von doch manegem schade geschiht:

there from yet to-many harm happens:

ez kam von dem geleite

it came from the guidance

sîner kintheite,

of-his childhood,

daz er in sîner blüenden jugent

that he in his blooming youth

295

mit jugentlicher hêrren tugent

with youthful lords' virtue

wider sîn selbes sælden streit.

against his own fortune strove.

daz geschuof sîn spilndiu kintheit,

that caused his playful childhood,

diu mit ir übermuote

which with its arrogance

in sînem herzen bluote.

in his heart bloomed.

300

er tet vil rehte als elliu kint,
he did very exactly as all children,

diu selten vorbesihtic sint;
who seldom foresighted are;

er nam vür sich niht sorgen war,
he took before himself not of-cares heed,

wan lebete und lebete und lebete êt dar.
but lived and lived and lived just on.

305 dô sîn leben ze lebene vienc,
when his life to living began,

ûf als der tasterne gienc
up as the day-star went

und lachende in die werlde sach
and laughing into the world looked

dô wânde er, des doch niene geschach,
then thought he, what yet never happened,

daz er iemer alsô solte leben
that he ever so should live

310 und in der lebenden süeze sweben.
and in the living sweetness hover.

nein sînes lebenes begin
no his life's beginning

der gie mit kurzem lebene hin;
it went with short life away;

diu morgenliche sunne
the morning sun

sîner werltwunne
of-his world-bliss

315 dô diu von êrste spiln began
when it at first play began

dô viel sîn gæher âbent an,
then fell his sudden evening on,

der im vor was verborgen,
which to-him before was bidden,

und laschte im sînen morgen.

and quenched to-him his morning.

wie er aber genennet wære,

how he however named were,

daz kûndet uns diz mære;

that tells to-us this tale;

sîn âventiure tuot ez schîn:

his adventure makes it manifest:

sîn rehter name was Riwalîn,

his right name was Riwalin,

sîn ânam was Kanêlengres.

his by-name was Kanelengres.

gnuoge wænent unde jehent des,

many think and say this,

der selbe hêrre er wære

the same lord he were

ein Lohnoisære,

a Lohnoiser,

kûnec über daz lant ze Lohnois.

king over the land at Lohnois.

nu tuot uns aber Thômas gewis,

now makes to-us however Thomas certain,

der ez an den âventiuren las,

who it in the adventures read,

daz er von Parmenîe was

that he of Parmenie was

unde hete ein sunderez lant

and had a separate land

von eines Britûnes hant

from a Breton's hand

und solte dem sîn undertân:

and should to-him be subject:

der selbe hiez li duc Morgân.

the same was-called the duke Morgan.

320

325

330

335 Nu daz der hêrre Riwalîn
 Now that the lord Riwalin
 wol und nâch grôzen êren sîn
 well and after great honors his
 wol driu jâr ritter was gewesen
 well three years knight had been
 und hete wol hin heim gelesen
 and had well away home gathered
 ganzliche kunst ze ritterschaft,
 entire skill in knighthood,

340 ze urliuqe vollecliche kraft,
 in war full strength,
 er hete lant, liute unde guot.
 he had land, people and goods.
 weder ez dô nôt alde übermuot
 whether it then need or arrogance
 geschüefe, des enweiz ich niht,
 should-cause, that know I not,
 wan als sîn âventiure giht,
 except as his adventure says,

345 sô greif er Morgânen an
 so attacked he Morgan on
 als einen schuldigen man.
 as a guilty man.
 er kam geriten in sîn lant
 he came ridden into his land
 mit alsô kreftiger hant,
 with so mighty hand,
 daz er im mit gewalte
 that he to-him with force

350 genuoge bürge valte;
 many castles felled;

die stete muosen sich ergeben
the towns must themselves surrender

und lösen ir guot unde ir leben
and ransom their goods and their life

rehte alse liep alse ez in was,
just as dear as it to-them was,

unz er zesamene gelas
until he together gathered

gülte unde guotes die kraft,
of-revenue and of-goods the strength,

355

daz er sîne ritterschaft
that he his knighthood

sô starke gemêrte,
so strongly increased,

swar er mit here kêrte,
wherever he with army turned,

ez wæren bürge oder stete,
it were castles or towns,

daz er vil sînes willen tete.
that he much of-his will did.

360

ouch nam er dicke schaden dar an.
also took he often harm there on.

er galt mit manegem biderben man;
he paid with many-a worthy man;

wan Morgân was an sîner wer,
for Morgan was on his defense,

der bestuont in ofte mit her
he attacked him often with army

und tete in dicke schadehaft;
and made him often harmed;

365

wan ze urliuqe und ze ritterschaft
for to war and to knighthood

hœret verlust unde gewin:
belongs loss and gain:

hie mite sô gânt urliuqe hin;
here with so go wars along;

verliesen unde gewinnen
losing and winning

370 daz treit die krieqe hinnen.
that carries the wars hence.

ich wæne im Morgân alsam tete,
I think to-him Morgan likewise did,

er valte ime ouch bürqe unde stete
he felled to-him also castles and towns

und brach im underwîlen abe
and broke to-him at-times off

sîne liute und sîne habe
his people and his possessions

375 und tete im, swaz er mohte,
and did to-him, whatever he could,

daz doch niht vil entohte;
that yet not much availed;

wan in tete iemer Riwalîn
for him did ever Riwalin

mit grôzem schaden wider in
with great harm back in

und treip des mit im alse vil,
and drove of-it with him as much,

380 unz er in brâhte ûf daz zil,
until he him brought onto the point,

daz er sich nihtes kunde erwern
that he himself of-nothing could defend

noch sich niender trûte ernern
nor himself nowhere trusted preserve

niwan in sînen vesten
except in his fortresses

den sterkestun und den besten.
the strongest and the best.

die selben besaz Riwalîn

385

the same besieged Riwalin

und gab im ûz voller hant dar in

and gave him from full hand there in

bataljen unde strîten.

battles and strifes.

er tet in zallen zîten

he did him at-all times

strackes rehte unz in diu tor.

straight right until into the gates.

ouch hete er dicke dâ vor

390

also had he often there before

turneie und rîche ritterschaft.

tournaments and rich knighthood.

alsus lag er im obe mit kraft

thus lay he him over with strength

und herte in in dem lande

and harried him in the land

mit roube und mit brande,

with robbery and with burning,

biz sich Morgân ze tage dô bôt

395

until himself Morgan to parley then offered

und daz erwarp mit aller nôt,

and that won with all distress,

daz ez getaget wart under in zwein

that it parleyed was between them two

und ein jâr fride getragen inein,

and a year's peace borne together,

und wart der von in beiden

and was it by them both

mit bûrgen und mit eiden

400

with pledges and with oaths

gestâtet, alse er solte sîn.

confirmed, as it should be.

hie mite sô kêrte Riwalîn

here with so turned Riwalîn

mit den sînen heim, rîch unde frô.

with the his-ones home, rich and glad.

ûz milter hant lônde er in dô

from generous hand rewarded be them then

405 und machte si alle rîche.

and made them all rich.

er lie si frôliche

be let them gladly

und wol nâch sînen êren

and well after his honors

wider zir heimuote kêren.

back to-their homeland turn.

Riwalin Comes to Cornwall

IV

His affairs thus settled, Riwalin resolves to see the court of the young King Mark of Cornwall, whose fame is great, and to learn courtly manners there. He commends his land to his marshal, Rual the lieutenant, and sails with twelve companions. Mark receives him with honor at Tintajoel, and Riwalin is loved by rich and poor alike. Mark proclaims a May festival for four weeks in a meadow by Tintajoel, where birdsong and flowers greet the gathered knights and ladies.

Nu daz Kanêle alsus gelanc

Now that to-Kanel thus succeeded

410 nu was dâ nâch vil harte unlanc,

now was there after very quite not-long,

unz daz er aber einer vart
until that he again one time

durch banekîe ineine wart
for pastime resolved became

und er sich aber ûz reite
and he himself again out equipped

mit grôzer rîcheite,
with great richness,

alsô der êrengire tuot.
as the honor-greedy does.

415

al daz geræte und al daz guot,
all the gear and all the goods,

des er bedürfen wolte
which he need would

und ein jâr haben solte,
and a year have should,

daz wart im an ein schif getragen.
that was for-him onto a ship carried.

er hete vil gehœret sagen,
he had much heard say,

420

wie hœfsch und wie êrbære
how courtly and how honorable

der junge künic wære
the young king were

von Kurnewâle Marke,
of Cornwall Mark,

des êre wuohs dô starke;
whose honor grew then strongly;

der hete dô ze sîner hant
he had then at his hand

425

Kurnewal und Engellant.
Cornwall and England.

Kurnewal was aber sîn erbe dô.
Cornwall was however his inheritance then.

umbe Engelanden stuond ez sô:

about England stood it so:

daz hete er sît des mâles,

that had he since the time,

430 daz die Sahsen von Gâles

that the Saxons of Wales

die Britûne dâ vertriben

the Britons there drove-out

unde sî dâ hêrren beliben,

and they there lords remained,

von den ez ouch den namen verliez

from whom it also the name lost

daz lant, daz ê Britanje hiez,

the land, that before Britain was-called,

435 und wart ouch iesâ dô genant

and was also at-once then named

nâch den von Gâles Engellant.

after those of Wales England.

nu die daz lant besâzen

now they the land occupied

und ez under sich gemâzen,

and it among themselves measured,

dô wolten si alle künegelîn

then would they all little-kings

440 und hêrren von in selben sîn:

and lords of them selves be:

diz wart ir aller ungewin.

this became their of-all loss.

sus begunden sî sich under in
thus began they themselves among them

slahen unde morden starke
slay and murder strongly

und befulhen ouch dô Marke
and commended also then to-Mark

sich und daz lant in sîne pflege;
themselves and the land into his care;

445

sît her diendez im alle wege
since then served-it him all ways

sô sêre und sô vorhtliche,
so sorely and so fearfully,

daz nie kein künicrîche
that never any kingdom

eim kûnege mê gediende baz.
to-a king more served better.

ouch saget di histôrje von im daz,
also says the history of him that,

450

daz allen den bîlanden,
that to-all the neighbor-lands,

diu sînen namen erkanden,
which his name knew,

kein kûnec sô werder was als er.
no king so worthy was as he.

dâ hin was Riwalînes ger.
there to was Riwalin's desire.

aldâ dâhte er belîben,
there thought he remain,

455

ein jâr mit ime vertriben

a year with him pass

und von im werden tugenthaft

and from him become virtuous

und lernen niwan ritterschaft

and learn only knighthood

und ebenen sîne site baz.

and smooth his manners better.

460 sîn edelez herze seite im daz:

his noble heart told him that:

erkande er fremeder lande site,

knew he of-foreign lands' manners,

dâ bezzerte er die sîne mite

there bettered he the his with

und würde selbe erkant dervan.

and should-become self known thereby.

mit disen sinnen huob er an:

with these thoughts began he on:

465 er bevalch sîn liut und sîn lant

he commended his people and his land

an sînes marschalkes hant,

into his marshal's hand,

eines hêrren von dem lande,

of-a lord of the land,

an dem er triuwe erkande,

in whom he faithfulness knew,

der hiez Rûal li foitenant.

he was-called Rual the lieutenant.

470 sus kêrte Riwalîn zehant

thus turned Riwalin at-once

mit zwelf gesellen über sê;

with twelve companions over sea;

er bedorfte dô dekeines mê,

he needed then none more,

er hete her hie mite genuoc.

he had army here with enough.

nu sich diu zît alsô getruoc,

now itself the time so bore,

daz er ze Kurnewâle kam

that he to Cornwall came

475

und ûf dem mer aldâ vernam,

and on the sea there heard,

daz Marke der mære

that Mark the famed

ze Tintajoêle wære,

at Tintajoel were,

dâ kêrte er sîne reise hin.

there turned he his journey thither.

dâ stiez er ûz, dâ vand er in

there landed he out, there found he him

480

und wart des innecliche frô.

and became of-it inwardly glad.

sich und die sîne kleite er dô

himself and the bis-ones clothed he then

rîliche und als im wol gezam.

richly and as him well befitted.

nu daz er dô ze hove kam,

now that he then to court came,

Marke der tugenderîche

Mark the virtue-rich

485

der enphienc in tugentlîche

he received him virtuously

und mit im al die sîne.

and with him all the bis-ones.

man bôt dâ Riwalîne

one offered there to-Riwalin

den anphanc und die êre,

the welcome and the honor,

- 490 daz ez ime dâ vor nie mêre
that it to-him there before never more
 ze keinen zîten anderswâ
at no times elsewhere
 sô werde erboten wart sô dâ.
so worthily offered was as there.
 hie spilten sîne gedanke mite;
here played his thoughts with;
 diz liebete ime den hovesite.
this endeared to-him the court-custom.
- 495 er dâhte dicke wider sich:
he thought often toward himself:
 »binamen, got selbe der hât mich
»truly, God self he has me
 ze disem lantgesinde brâht!
to this land-folk brought!
 mîn sælde hât mich wol bedâht:
my fortune has me well provided:
 swaz ich von Markes tugenden ie
whatever I of Mark's virtues ever
- 500 gehôrte sagen, deist allez hie.
heard say, that-is all here.
 sîn leben deist höfsch unde guot.«
his life that-is courtly and good.»
 sus seite er Marke sînen muot,
thus told he to-Mark his purpose,
 war umbe er komen wære.
what for he come were.
 nu Marke sîniu mære
now Mark his tidings
- 505 und sînen muot hete vernomen,
and his purpose had heard,
 er sprach: »got und mir willekomen!
he spoke: »to-God and to-me welcome!

lîp unde guot und swaz ich hân,
body and goods and whatever I have,

daz sol ze iuerm gebote stân.«
that shall at your command stand.»

Kanêlengres der was dâ wol

Kanelengres he was there well

des hoves, der hof der was sîn vol;
of-the court, the court it was of-him full;

510

arme unde rîche heten in
poor and rich had him

liep unde werden under in,
dear and worthy among them,

und enwart nie gast geminnet baz.
and was never guest loved better.

ouch kunde er wol geschulden daz:
also could he well deserve that:

der tugenthafte Riwalîn,
the virtuous Riwalin,

515

der was und kunde wol gesîn
he was and could well be

mit lîbe und mit guote,
with body and with goods,

mit geselleclîchem muote
with companionable spirit

ze ir aller dienste gereit.
to their of-all service ready.

als lebete er in der werdekeit
so lived he in the worthiness

520

und in der rehten gûete,
and in the right goodness,

die er in sîn gemüete
which he into his mind

mit tegelîchen tugenden nam,
with daily virtues took,

unz Markes hôhgezît dô kam.

until Mark's high-feast then came.

525 die hôhzît hete Marke

the high-feast had Mark

besetzt alsô starke,

appointed so strongly,

sô mit gebote sô mit bete:

as with command as with request:

swenne er in sînen boten tete,

whenever he to-them his messengers did,

sô kam diu ritterschaft zehant

so came the knighthood at-once

530 von dem künicrîche ze Engelant

from the kingdom of England

in dem jâre ze einem mâle

in the year at one time

gevarn ze Kurnewâle.

fared to Cornwall.

die selben brâhten mit in dar

the same brought with them there

manege süeze frouwîne schar

many-a sweet womanly company

535 und ander manege schönheit.

and other many-a beauty.

nu was diu hôhgezît geleit,

now was the high-feast laid,

benennet unde besprochen

named and agreed

die blüenden vier wochen,

the blooming four weeks,

sô der vil süeze meie in gât

as the very sweet May in goes

540 unz an daz, dâ er ende hât,

until on that, where he end has,

bî Tintajoël sô nâhen,

by Tintajoel so near,

daz sî sich undersâhen

that they themselves saw-each-other

in die schœnesten ouwe,

into the fairest meadow,

die keines ougen schouwe

which any eye's gaze

ie überlûhte ê oder sît.

ever outshone before or since.

545

diu senfte sûeze sumerzît

the soft sweet summertime

diu hete ir sûeze unmûezekeit

it had its sweet occupation

mit sûezem flize an sî geleit.

with sweet diligence on it laid.

diu kleinen waltvogelîn,

the little forest-birds,

diu des ôren fröude sulen sîn,

which of-the ears joy shall be,

550

bluomen, gras, loup unde bluot

flowers, grass, leaf and blossom

und swaz dem ougen sanfte tuot

and whatever to-the eye softly does

und edele herze erfröuwen sol,

and noble heart gladden shall,

des was diu sumerouwe vol.

of-that was the summer-meadow full.

man vant dâ swaz man wolte,

one found there whatever one would,

555

daz der meie bringen solte:

which the May bring should:

den schate bî der sunnen,

the shade by the sun,

die linde bi dem brunnen,

the linden by the spring,

die senften, linden winde,

the soft, gentle winds,

560 die Markes ingesinde

which Mark's household

sîn wesen engegene macheten.

its being toward made.

die lichten bluomen lacheten

the bright flowers laughed

ûz dem betouwetem grase.

out-of the bedewed grass.

des meien friunt, der grüne wase,

the May's friend, the green turf,

565 der hete ûz bluomen ane geleit

it had from flowers on laid

sô wunneclîchiu sumerkleit,

so delightful summer-clothes,

daz sî den lieben gestalten

that they to-the dear guests

in ir ougen widerglesten.

in their eyes glittered-back.

diu süeze boumbluot sach den man

the sweet tree-blossom looked the man

570 sô rehte suoze lachende an,

so right sweetly laughing on,

daz sich daz herze und al der muot

that itself the heart and all the spirit

wider an die lachende bluot

back at the laughing blossom

mit spilnden ougen machete

with playing eyes made

und ir allez widerlachete.

and to-it all laughed-back.

- daz senfte vogelgedœne, 575
the soft bird-song,
- daz süeze, daz schoene,
the sweet, the fair,
- daz ôren unde muote
which to-ears and spirit
- vil dicke kumet ze guote,
very often comes to good,
- daz fulte dâ berge unde tal.
that filled there hills and valley.
- diu sælige nahtegal, 580
the blessed nightingale,
- daz liebe süeze vogelîn,
the dear sweet little-bird,
- daz iemer süeze müeze sîn,
which ever sweet may be,
- daz kallete ûz der blüete
that trilled out-of the blossom
- mit solher übermüete,
with such exuberance,
- daz dâ manec edel herze van 585
that there many-a noble heart from-it
- fröude und hôhen muot gewan.
joy and high spirit gained.

The May Festival

V

The guests camp in tents and under the lindens, and there is dancing, jousting, and a buburt. Mark's sister Blanscheflur, fairer than any woman seen, is the wonder of the feast, and her beauty ennobles every man who looks on her. In the buburt Riwalin outrides the rest, and the ladies praise his limbs, his seat, and his bearing. Blanscheflur marks their words, for she has taken him into her heart, where he wears the crown; she hides it from them all.

Dâ hete diu geselleschaft

There had the company

frô und sêre fröudehaft

glad and sorely joyful

gehütet ûf daz grüene gras,

butted on the green grass,

590 also iegelîches wille was.

as each-one's will was.

dâ nâch als iegelîches ger

there after as each-one's desire

ze fröuden stuont, dâ nâch lag er:

to joys stood, there after lay he:

die rîchen lâgen rîche,

the rich lay richly,

die höfschen hovelîche.

the courtly courtly.

595 dise lâgen under sîden dâ,

these lay under silk there,

jene under bluomen anderswâ.

those under flowers elsewhere.

diu linde was genuoger dach,

the linden was of-many roof,

genuoge man gehütet sach

many one butted saw

mit loupgrünen esten.

with leaf-green branches.

von gesinde noch von gesten

of household nor of guests

wart geherberget nie

was lodged never

sô wunneclîchen alse hie.

so delightfully as here.

ouch vant man dâ rât über rât,

also found one there provision over provision,

als man ze hôhgezîten hât,

as one at high-feasts has,

an spîse und edeler wæte,

in food and noble clothing,

des iegelîcher hæte

with-which each-one had

ze wunsche sich gewarnet dar.

to wish himself provided there.

dar zuo sô nam ir Marke war

there to so took of-them Mark heed

sô grôze und alsô rîche,

so great and so rich,

daz si alle rîliche

that they all richly

lebeten unde wâren frô.

lived and were glad.

sus huop diu hôhgezît sich dô,

thus raised the high-feast itself then,

und swes der gerne sehende man

and whatever the gladly seeing man

ze sehene guoten muot gewan,

to see good spirit gained,

600

605

610

615 daz lie diu state dâ wol geschehen.
that let the occasion there well happen.
 man sach dâ, swaz man wolde sehen:
one saw there, whatever one would see:
 dise fuoren sehen frouwen,
these went see ladies,
 jene ander tanzen schouwen;
those others dancing behold;
 dise sâhen buhurdieren,
these saw buhurt-riding,

620 jene ander justieren.
those others jousting.
 swâ zuo den man sîn wille truoc,
wherever to the man his will bore,
 des alles vand er dâ genuoc;
of-that all found he there enough;
 wan alle die dâ wâren
for all who there were
 von fröudebæren jâren,
of joy-bearing years,

625 die flizzen sich enwiderstrît
they strove themselves in-rivalry
 ze fröuden an der hôhgezît;
to joys at the high-feast;
 und Marke der guote
and Mark the good
 der höfsche hôhgemuote
the courtly high-spirited
 âne ander frouwen schônheit,
without other ladies' beauty,

630 die er hete an sînen rinc geleit,
which he had into his ring laid,

sô hete er doch besunder

so had he yet apart

ein sunderlîchez wunder,

a special wonder,

Blanschefflûr sîn swester dâ,

Blanschefflur his sister there,

ein maget, daz dâ noch anderswâ

a maiden, that there nor elsewhere

schœner wîp nie wart gesehen.

fairer woman never was seen.

wir hoeren von ir schœne jehen,

we hear of her beauty say,

sine gesæhe nie kein lebende man

her should-see never any living man

mit innecklîchen ougen an,

with inward eyes on,

ern minnete dâ nâch iemer mê

unless-he loved there after ever more

wîp unde tugende baz danne ê.

women and virtue better than before.

635

640

Diu sælege ougenweide

The blessed eye-pasture

diu machete ûf der heide

she made on the heath

vil manegen man frech unde fruot,

very many-a man bold and wise,

manec edel herze hôhgemuot.

many-a noble heart high-spirited.

dar zuo was in der ouwe

there to was in the meadow

manec ander schoeniu frouwe,

many-a other fair lady,

645

der iegelīchiu mohte sīn

of-whom each could be

von schœne ein rīchiu künigīn,

of beauty a rich queen,

die muot und frōude ouch bāren

who spirit and joy also bore

650 den allen, die dā wāren,

to-them all, who there were,

und macheten manic herze frō.

and made many-a heart glad.

hie mite huop sich der buhurt dô,

here with raised itself the buhurt then,

von gesinde und ouch von gestalten

of household and also of guests

die werdesten und die besten,

the worthiest and the best,

655 die riten dā zuo wā unde wā.

they rode there to here and there.

ouch was der werde Marke dā

also was the worthy Mark there

und sīn geselle Riwalīn

and his companion Riwalin

âne ander ingesinde sīn,

without other household his,

die sich ouch geflizzen hæten,

who themselves also striven had,

660 wie sīz dā sô getætēn,

how they-it there so should-do,

daz ez dā sagebære

that it there tellable

und wol ze lobene wære.

and well to praise were.

man sach dâ zuo dem mâle

one saw there at the time

von phelle und von zendâle

of brocade and of sendal

manec ors bedâht ze flize,

many-a horse covered to diligence,

665

manege decke snêwîze,

many-a caparison snow-white,

gel, brûn, rô, grüne unde blâ,

yellow, brown, red, green and blue,

sô sach man ander anderswâ

so saw one others elsewhere

von edeler sîden wol gebriten,

of noble silk well woven,

jene ander manege wîs zesniten,

those others many ways slashed,

670

gevêhet und geparrieret,

furred and parti-colored,

sus und sô gefeitieret.

thus and so fashioned.

diu ritterschaft diu fuorte kleit

the knighthood it wore clothes

mit wunderlicher rîcheit

with wondrous richness

zesniten und zehouwen.

slashed and cut.

675

ouch lie der sumer wol schouwen,

also let the summer well see,

daz er dâ mit Marke wolde sîn:

that he there with Mark would be:

manec wunneclîch schapelekîn

many-a delightful little-chaplet

von bluomen sach man an der schar,

of flowers saw one on the company,

680 diu er im ze stiure brâhte dar.

which he to-him to tribute brought there.

In dirre süezen sumerkraft

In this sweet summer-strength

huop sich ein süeziu ritterschaft;

raised itself a sweet knight-hood;

diu schar sich dâ dicke underwar.

the company itself there often intermingled.

si zogeten sich her unde dar

they drew themselves hither and thither

685 und triben des vil und sô genuoc,

and drove of-it much and so enough,

biz sich der buhurt dô getruoc,

until itself the buhurt then bore,

dâ Blanschefflûr diu werde,

where Blanschefflur the worthy,

ein wunder ûf der erde,

a wonder on the earth,

und manec ander schœniu frouwe

and many-a other fair lady

690 sâzen an ir schouwe.

sat at their viewing.

wan dise die riten sô rîche,

for these they rode so richly,

sô rehte keiserlîche,

so right imperially,

daz ez manic ouge gerne sach.

that it many-a eye gladly saw.

swaz aber von ieman dâ geschach,

whatever however by anyone there happened,

sô was der höfsche Riwalîn

so was the courtly Riwalîn

695

und muose ez ouch binamen sîn,

and must it also truly be,

der ez des tages und an der stete

who it of-the day and at the place

ze wunsche vor in allen tete.

to wish before them all did.

ouch nâmen sîn die frouwen war

also took of-him the ladies heed

und jâhen des, daz in der schar

and said of-it, that in the company

700

nieman nâch ritterlichem site

no-one after knightly custom

alsô behendeclîche rite,

so deftly should-ride,

und lobeten alle sîniu dinc.

and praised all his things.

»seht«, sprâchen sî, »der jungelinc

»look«, spoke they, »the youth

der ist ein sæliger man.

he is a blessed man.

705

wie sæleclîche stât im an

how blessedly stands to-him on

allez daz, daz er begât!

all that, which he does!

wie gâr sîn lîp ze wunsche stât!

how wholly his body to wish stands!

wie gânt im sô gelîche inein

how go to-him so evenly together

diu sîniu keiserlîchen bein!

the his imperial legs!

710

wie rehte sîn schilt ze aller zît

how rightly his shield at all time

an sîner stat gelîmet lît!

at its place glued lies!

wie zimet der schaft in sîner hant!

how befits the shaft in his hand!

wie wol stât allez sîn gewant!

how well stands all his clothing!

715 wie stât sîn houbet und sîn hâr!

how stands his head and his hair!

wie süeze ist aller sîn gebâr!

how sweet is all his bearing!

wie sæleclîche stât sîn lîp!

how blessedly stands his body!

ô wol si sæligez wîp,

oh well be blessed woman,

der fröude an ime belîben sol!«

to-whom joy in him remain shall!«

720 nu marcte ir aller mære wol

now marked their of-all tidings well

Blanschefflûr diu guote,

Blanschefflur the good,

wan si in ouch in ir muote,

for she him also in her spirit,

swaz ir dekeiniu tete,

whatever of-them any did,

ze hôhem werde hete.

at high worth had.

725 si hete in in ir muot genomen,

she had him into her spirit taken,

er was ir in ir herze komen;

he was to-her into her heart come;

er truoc gewalteclîche

he bore powerfully

in ir herzen künicrîche

in her heart's kingdom

den zepter und die krône;

the scepter and the crown;

daz sî doch alsô schône

that she yet so beautifully

730

und alsô tougenlîchen hal,

and so secretly hid,

daz si ez in allen vor verstal.

that she it them all before concealed.

Blanscheflur's Greeting

VI

After the buhurt Riwalin rides up to Blanscheflur and greets her; she answers that he has wronged her in her dearest friend, meaning her heart, and at parting she sighs, "Dear friend, God bless thee!" Riwalin ponders her words and comes to believe they were spoken for love, and she becomes the queen of his heart. The poet likens a lover to a bird caught on a limed twig: the harder Riwalin struggles between hope and doubt, the faster love holds him, until hope wins and he is sure she loves him.

Nu daz der buhurt dô zergie

Now that the buhurt then dissolved

und sich diu ritterschaft zerlie

and itself the knight hood dispersed

und iegelîcher kêrte,

and each-one turned,

735

dar in sîn muot gelêrte,

there into his spirit directed,

dô kam ez von âventiure alsô,

then came it by adventure so,

daz Riwalîn gekêrte dô,

that Riwalin turned then,

dâ Blanschefflûr diu schoene saz.

where Blanschefflur the fair sat.

740 hie mite gesprancte er nâher baz

here with galloped he nearer better

und als er under ir ougen sach,

and as he under her eyes looked,

vil minneclîche er zuo ir sprach:

very lovingly he to her spoke:

»â, dê vus sal, bêle!«

»ah, God you save, fair-one!«

»merzî« dît la puzêle

»thanks« says the maiden

745 und sprach vil schemelîche:

and spoke very bashfully:

»hêrre got der rîche,

»lord God the rich,

der elliu herze rîche tuot,

who all hearts rich makes,

der rîche iu herze unde muot!

he enrich for-you heart and spirit!

und iu sî grôze genigen

and to-you be great bowing

750 und aber des rehtes unverzigen,

and yet of-the right unrenounced,

des ich an iuch ze redene hân.«

which I against you to speak have.«

»ach, sûeze, waz hân ich getân?»

»ah, sweet-one, what have I done?»

sprach aber der hofsche Riwalîn.

spoke again the courtly Riwalin.

si sprach: »an einem friunde mîn,

she spoke: »in a friend of-mine,

dem besten, den ich ie gewan,

the best, whom I ever gained,

dâ habet ir mich beswæret an.«

there have you me aggrieved in.«

»jâ hêrre«, dâhte er wider sich,

»yes lord«, thought he to himself,

»waz mære ist diz? oder waz hân ich

»what tidings is this? or what have I

begangen wider ir hulden?

done against her favor?

waz gît si mir ze schulden?»

what gives she me to guilt?»

und wânde, daz er eteswen

and thought, that he someone

ir mâge disen oder den

of-her kinsmen this-one or that-one

unwizzende an der ritterschaft

unknowing in the knighthood

gemachet hete schadehaft,

made had harmed,

dâ von ir herze swære

there from her heart heavy

und ime erbolgen wære.

and to-him angered were.

nein, der friunt, des sî gewuoc,

no, the friend, of-whom she mentioned,

daz was ir herze, in dem si truoc

that was her heart, in which she bore

von sînen schulden ungemach:

for his guilt discomfort:

daz was der friunt, von dem si sprach;

that was the friend, of whom she spoke;

iedoch enwester niht hie mite.

yet knew-be not here with.

755

760

765

770

nâch sînem elîchen site
after his natural manner

sprach er vil minneclîche zir:
spoke he very lovingly to-her:

»schœne, ine wil niht, daz ir mir
»fair-one, I will not, that you to-me

775 haz oder argen willen traget;
hatred or ill will bear;

wan ist ez wâr, als ir mir saget,
for (if)-is it true, as you to-me say,

sô rihtet selbe über mich:
so judge yourself over me:

swaz ir gebietet, daz tuon ich.«
whatever you command, that do I.«

diu süeze sprach: »durch dise geschiht
the sweet-one spoke: »for this thing

780 enhazze ich iuch ze sêre niht;
bate I you too sorely not;

ine minne iuch ouch niht umbe daz.
I love you also not for that.

ich wil iuch aber versuochen baz,
I will you however test better,

wie ir mir ze buoze wellet stân
how you to-me to amends will stand

umbe daz, daz ir mir habet getân.«
for that, which you to-me have done.«

785 Sus neig er ir und wolte dan,
Thus bowed he to-her and would away,

und sî, diu schœne, ersûfte in an
and she, the fair-one, sighed him at

vil tougenlîchen unde sprach
very secretly and spoke

ûz inneclîchem herzen: »ach,
from inward heart: »ah,

friunt lieber, got segene dich!«

friend dear, God bless thee!«

dô alrêste huob ez sich

then first-of-all raised it itself

790

mit gedanken under in.

with thoughts between them.

Kanêlengres der kêrte hin

Kanelengres he turned away

in maneger slahte trahte.

into of-many kind pondering.

er trahte maneger slahte,

he pondered of-many kind,

waz Blanscheffiure swære

what Blanscheffur's grief

795

und dirre mære wære.

and this tidings were.

ir gruoꝝ, ir rede betrahte er gâr,

her greeting, her speech considered he wholly,

ir sûft, ir segen, al ir gebâr,

her sigh, her blessing, all her bearing,

daz marcete er al besunder

that marked he all apart

und begunde iedoch hier under

and began yet here under

800

ir siuften und ir süezen segen

her sighing and her sweet blessing

ûf den wec der minne wegen.

on the way of-the love weigh.

er kam binamen an den wân,

he came truly to the belief,

diu zwei diu wæren getân

the two they were done

durch niht niwan durch minne.

for nothing except for love.

805

daz enzunte ouch sîne sinne,
that kindled also his senses,

daz sî sâ wider fuoren
that they at-once back went

und nâmen Blanscheffuoren
and took Blanscheffur

und fuorten sî mit in zehant
and led her with them at-once

810 in Riwalînes herzen lant
into Riwalin's heart's land

und krônten sî dar inne
and crowned her there within

im ze einer küniginne.
for-him to a queen.

jâ Blanscheffûr und Riwalîn,
yes Blanscheffur and Riwalin,

der künec, diu süeze künigîn,
the king, the sweet queen,

815 die teilten wol gelîche
they shared well equally

ir herzen künicrîche.
their hearts' kingdom.

daz ir wart Riwalîne,
that hers became Riwalin's,

dâ wider wart ir daz sîne,
there against became to-her the his,

und wiste iedoch dewederz niht
and knew yet either-one not

820 umbe des anderen geschiht.
about the other's case.

si heten sich wol under in zwein
they had themselves well between them two

einmüetecliche und rehte inein
unanimously and rightly together

mit ir gedanken ondernomen.
with their thoughts undertaken.

dâ was wol reht ze rehte komen:
there was well right to right come:

si lag ouch ime ze herzen
she lay also to-him to heart

825

mit dem selben smerzen,
with the same pain,

den sî von sînen schulden leit.
whiche she for his guilt suffered.

und wande er aber gewisheit
and for he however certainty

ir willen niht enhete,
of-her will not had,

in welher wîs siz tete,
in which way she-it did,

830

durch haz oder aber durch minne,
for hatred or else for love,

daz machete sîne sinne
that made his senses

in zwîvele wanken;
in doubt waver;

er wancte mit gedanken
he wavered with thoughts

wîlent abe und wîlent an.
at-times off and at-times on.

835

iezuo wolte er binamen dan
now would he truly away

und al zehant sô wolte er dar,
and all at-once so would he thither,

unz er sich alsô gâr verwar
until he himself so wholly entangled

in den stricken sîner trahte,
in the snares of-his pondering,

840 daz er dannen niht enmahte.
that he thence not could.

Der gedanchafte Riwalîn
The thoughtful Riwalîn

der tete wol an im selben schîn,
he made well on him self manifest,

daz der minnende muot
that the loving spirit

rehte also der frîe vogel tuot,
just as the free bird does,

845 der durch die frîheit, die er hât,
which for the freedom, which it has,

ûf daz gelîmde zwî gestât;
on the limed twig alights;

als er des lîmes danne entsebet
when it of-the lime then perceives

und er sich ûf ze flûhte hebet,
and it itself up to flight lifts,

sô klebet er mit den fûezen an.
so sticks it with the feet on.

850 sus reget er vederen und wil dan.
thus stirs it feathers and wants away.

dâ mite gerüeret er daz zwî
there with touches it the twig

an keiner stat, swie kûme ez sî,
in no place, however barely it be,

ez enbinde in unde mache in haft;
it unless-binds it and makes it fast;

sô sleht er danne ûz aller kraft
so strikes it then out-of all strength

dar unde dar und aber dar,
thither and thither and again thither,

855

unz er ze jungeste gar
until it at last wholly

sich selben vehtende übersiget
itself self fighting overcomes

und gelîmet an dem zwîge liget.
and limed on the twig lies.

rehte in der selben wîse tuot
just in the same way does

der unbetwungene muot.
the unconstrained spirit.

860

sô der in senede trahte kumet
so it into yearning pondering comes

und liebe an ime ir wunder frumet
and love on it her wonder works

mit senelîcher swære,
with yearning grief,

sô wil der senedære
so wants the yearner

ze sîner frîheite wider;
to his freedom back;

865

sô ziuhet in diu süeze nider
so draws him the sweetness down

der gelîmeten minne.
of-the limed love.

dâ verwirret er sich inne
there entangles he himself within

sô sêre, daz er sich von dan
so sorely, that he himself from thence

noch sus noch sô verrihten kan.
neither thus nor so extricate can.

870

als ergieng ez Riwalîne,

so went it to-Riwalin,

den ouch die trahte sîne

whom also the ponderings his

verwurren in der minne

entangled in the love

sînes herzen küniginne.

of-his heart's queen.

875 in hete wol beworrenheit

him had well confusion

in wunderlîch pârat geleit;

into wondrous plight laid;

wan er enwiste, weder ir muot

for he knew-not, whether her spirit

wider in wære übel oder guot;

toward him were ill or good;

ern erkande dannoch diz noch daz,

he-not knew yet this nor that,

880 weder ir minne noch ir haz.

neither her love nor her hatred.

ern sach noch trôst noch zwîvel an,

he saw neither comfort nor doubt on,

daz enliez ouch in noch dar noch dan.

that let also him neither thither nor thence.

trôst unde zwîvel fuorten in

comfort and doubt led him

unendelîchen under in:

endlessly between them:

885 trôst seite im minne, zwîvel haz.

comfort told him love, doubt hatred.

durch disen krieg und umbe daz

for this strife and for that

sone mohte er sînen vesten wân

so could he his firm belief

an ir dewederez verlân,

on of-them neither-one set,

an haz noch ouch an minne.

on hatred nor also on love.

sus swebeten sîne sinne

thus hovered his senses

890

in einer ungewissen habe:

in an uncertain harbor:

trôst truog in an und zwîvel abe.

comfort bore him on and doubt off.

ern vant niht stâtes an in zwein.

he found nothing steady in them two.

si gehullen sô noch sus inein:

they agreed so nor thus together:

sô zwîvel kam und seite im daz,

when doubt came and told him that,

895

sîn Blanschefflûr wære ime gehaz,

his Blanschefflur were to-him hostile,

sô wancte er unde wolte dan.

so wavered he and would away.

zehant kam trôst und truog in an

at-once came comfort and bore him on

ir minne und einen lieben wân;

her love and a dear belief;

sus muose er aber dâ bestân.

thus must he again there remain.

900

mit disem kriege enwister war;

with this war knew-he-not whither;

ern mohte weder dan noch dar.

he could neither thence nor thither.

sô er ie sêrer dannen ranc,
so he ever sorer thence struggled,

sô minne ie vaster widertwanc.
so love ever faster constrained-back.

905 sô er ie harter dannen flôch,
so he ever harder thence fled,

sô minne ie vaster widerzôch.
so love ever faster drew-back.

sus treip ez minne mit im an,
thus drove it love with him on,

biz doch der trôst den sige gewan
until yet the comfort the victory gained

und er den zwîvel gâr vertreip,
and it the doubt wholly drove-out,

910 und Riwalîn gewis beleip,
and Riwalin certain remained,

sîn Blanscheffûr diu minnet in.
his Blanscheffur she loves him.

des was sîn herze und al sîn sin
of-that was his heart and all his mind

einbæreliche an sî geleit,
unanimously on her laid,

daz nieman dô dâ wider streit.
that no-one then there against strove.

Blanscheflur's Lament

VII

Love transforms Riwalin: his old joy leaves him, and silence and sadness become his life. Blanscheflur suffers the same, though she does not yet know what the pain is. Alone, she laments that since she saw this man her heart has not been free, wonders whether he knows sorcery, and then blames not him but her own masterless heart, which has fallen on him alone out of all the men. She concludes that the sweet heart-sorrow she has heard of in the tales of loving women now lies in her own heart.

Nu daz diu süeze minne

915

Now that the sweet love

sîn herze und sîne sinne

his heart and his senses

al nâch ir willen hete brâht,

all after her will had brought,

dannoch was ime vil ungedâht,

still was to-him very unthought,

daz herzeliebe wære

that heart's-love were

sô nâhe gênde ein swære.

920

so near going a grief.

do er dô sîne âventiure

when he then his adventure

von sîner Blanschefliure

of his Blanscheflur

von ende her betrahte

from end hither considered

und allez sunder ahte,

and all without heed,

ir hâr, ir stirne, ir tinne,

925

her hair, her forehead, her temple,

ir wange, ir munt, ir kinne,

her cheek, her mouth, her chin,

den fröuderîchen ôstertac,
the joy-rich Easter-day,

der lachende in ir ougen lac:
which laughing in her eyes lay:

dô kam diu rehte minne,
then came the true love,

930 diu wære fiurærinne,
the very fire-kindler,

und stiez ir senefiuwer an,
and set her yearning-fire on,

daz fiur, dâ von sîn herze enbran,
the fire, there from his heart burned,

daz sînem lîbe sâ zestunt
which to-his body straightway at-once

schînbærelîche tete kunt,
visibly made known,

935 waz nâhe gêndiu swære
what near going grief

und senediu sorge wære.
and yearning sorrow were.

wan er greif in ein ander leben,
for he seized into an other life,

ein niuwe leben wart ime gegeben.
a new life was to-him given.

er verwandelte dâ mite
he changed there with

940 al sîne sinne und sîne site
all his senses and his manners

und wart mitalle ein ander man;
and became altogether an other man;

wan allez daz, des er began,
for all that, which he began,

daz was mit wunderlichen siten
that was with wondrous manners

und mit blintheit undersniten.
and with blindness interlaced.

sîne angeborne sinne
his inborn senses

945

die wâren von der minne
they were by the love

als wilde und also unstæte,
as wild and so unsteady,

als er sî erbeten hæte.
as-if he them wrung-by-asking had.

sîn leben begunde swachen
his life began weaken

von rehtem herzelachen;
from true heart-laughing;

950

des er dâ vor was wol gewon,
of-which he there before was well accustomed,

dâ zôch er sich mitalle von.
there drew he himself altogether from.

swîgen unde wesen unfrô,
be-silent and be unglad,

daz was sîn beste leben dô,
that was his best life then,

wan elliu sîn gemuotheit
for all his cheerfulness

955

was gâr in senele nôt geleit.
was wholly into yearning distress laid.

Ouch vergie sîn senelîch geschiht
Also passed-by his yearning state

die seneden Blanschefflûre niht;
the yearning Blanschefflur not;

diu was ouch mit dem selben schaden

she was also with the same harm

960 durch in, als er durch sî, beladen.

for him, as he for her, laden.

diu gewaltærinne Minne,

the sovereign Love,

diu was ouch in ir sinne

she was also into her senses

ein teil ze sturmelîche komen

a part too stormily come

und hete ir mit gewalte genomen

and had from-her with force taken

965 den besten teil ir mâze,

the best part of-her measure,

sine was an ir gelâze

she was in her bearing

ir selber noch der werlt niht mite

to-her self nor to-the world not with

nâch ir gewonlichem site;

according-to her customary manner;

swaz sî sich fröuden an genam,

whatever she herself of-joys on took,

970 swaz schimpfes ir ê wol gezam,

whatever of-sport to-her before well befitted,

daz missestuont ir allez dô.

that ill-suited her all then.

ir leben enschuof sich niwan sô,

her life shaped itself only so,

als ez ir an der nôt gewac,

as it to-her in the distress weighed,

diu nâhen an ir herzen lac.

which near at her heart lay.

- und alles des, des sî geleit 975
and of-all that, which she suffered
- von senelicher arbeit,
from yearning hardship,
- sone wiste sî niht, waz ir war,
so knew she not, what to-her was,
- wan sî wart nie dâ vor gewar,
for she became never there before aware,
- waz sus getâniu swære
what thus made grief
- und herzesorge wære, 980
and heart-sorrow were,
- und sprach vil dicke wider sich:
and spoke very often toward herself:
- »owê got hêrre, wie leb ich!
»alas God lord, how live I!
- wie unde waz ist mir geschehen?
how and what is to-me happened?
- ich hân doch manegen man gesehen,
I have yet many-a man seen,
- von dem mir nie kein leit geschach; 985
from whom to-me never any sorrow happened;
- und sît ich disen man gesach,
and since I this man saw,
- sît wart mîn herze niemer mê
since became my heart never more
- noch frî noch fröudehaft als ê.
neither free nor joyful as before.
- diz sehen, daz ich in hân getân,
this seeing, which I on-him have done,
- daz ist ein dinc, dâ von ich hân 990
that is a thing, there from I have
- erworben nâhe gêndiu leit.
gained near going sorrows.

mîn herze, daz nie nôt geleit,
my heart, which never distress suffered,

daz ist dâ von versêret;
that is there from wounded;

ez hât mich gâr verkêret
it has me wholly altered

995 an muote und an dem lîbe.
in spirit and in the body.

sol iegelîchem wîbe,
(if)-shall to-every woman,

diu in gehœret unde gesiht,
who him hears and sees,

geschehen, alse mir geschiht,
happen, as to-me happens,

und ist ez danne an ime geborn,
and (if)-is it then in him inborn,

1000 so ist michel schœne an ime verlorn
so is great beauty in him lost

und ist unnütze lebende ein man.
and is uselessly living a man.

ist aber, daz er von lêre kan
(if)-is however, that he from teaching knows

dekeiner slahte zouberlist,
any kind magic-art,

dâ von diz fremede wunder ist
there from this strange wonder is

1005 und disiu wunderlîche nôt,
and this wondrous distress,

sô wære er maneges bezzer tât
so would-be he by-much better dead

und ensolte in niemer wîp gesehen.
and should him never woman see.

durch got, wiest mir von ime geschehen
for God, how-is to-me from him happened

sô leide und alsô swâre!
so painfully and so heavily!

nune gesach ich doch zewâre 1010
now saw I yet truly

noch in noch nie dekeinen man
neither him nor ever any man

mit vîentlichen ougen an
with hostile eyes on

noch getruoc nie nieman haz.
nor bore never anyone hatred.

wâ mite mag ich geschulden daz,
where with may I deserve that,

daz mir von ieman leit geschehe, 1015
that to-me from anyone sorrow happen,

den ich mit friundes ougen sehe?
whom I with friend's eyes see?

Waz wîze ich aber dem guoten man?
What blame I however the good man?

er ist hie lîhte unschuldic an.
he is here perhaps innocent in.

swaz herzesorge ich mir von ime
whatever heart-sorrow I for-myself from him

und ouch durch sînen willen nime, 1020
and also for his sake take,

daz wizze got, deist allermeist
that know God, that-is mostly

mîn selbes herzen valleist.
my own heart's fault.

ich sach dâ manegen man und in:
I saw there many-a man and him:

waz mag er mir des, daz mîn sin
what may he for-me of-it, that my mind

1025 von den andern allen
from the others all

an in einen ist gevallen?
on him alone is fallen?

do ich sô vil manec edele wîp
when I so very many-a noble woman

den sînen keiserlîchen lîp
the his imperial body

und sînen ritterlîchen prîs
and his knightly prize

1030 mit lobe gehôrte in ballen wîs
with praise heard in ball's way

alse umbetrîben unde tragen
so tossed-about and carried

und sînes lobes sô vil gesagen,
and of-his praise so much said,

und ich mit ougen selbe sach
and I with eyes self saw

die tugende, der man von im jach,
the virtues, which one of him said,

1035 und allez in mîn herze las,
and all into my heart gathered,

swaz lobelîches an im was,
whatever praiseworthy in him was,

dâ von ergouchete mîn sin:
there from was-befooled my mind:

hie von geviel mîn herze an in.
here from fell my heart on him.

entriuwen, daz erblante mich,
in-truth, that blinded me,

- daz was daz zouber, dâ von ich 1040
that was the magic, there from I
- mîn selber sus vergezzen hân.
my self thus forgotten have.
- ern hât mir leides niht getân,
he has to-me of-sorrow nothing done,
- der liebe man, von dem ich klage,
the dear man, of whom I lament,
- den ich mit klage ze mære trage.
whom I with lament to tale bear.
- mîn tumber meisterlôser muot, 1045
my foolish masterless spirit,
- der ist, der mir dâ leide tuot,
it is, which to-me there sorrow does,
- der ist, der mînen schaden wil.
it is, which my harm wants.
- er wil und wil joch al ze vil,
it wants and wants indeed all too much,
- des er niht wellen solte,
what it not want should,
- ob er bedenken wolte, 1050
if it consider would,
- waz fuoge wære und êre.
what fitness were and honor.
- nune siht aber er niht mêre
now sees however it nothing more
- niwan sîn selbes willen an
except its own will on
- an disem sæligen man,
in this blessed man,
- an den er in sô kurzer frist 1055
on whom it in so short time
- sô rehte gâr gevallen ist.
so right wholly fallen is.

und semir got, ich wæne wol,
and so-help-me God, I think well,

ob ich es mit êren wænen sol,
if I it with honor think shall,

und sol ich mich der rede niht schamen
and (if)-shall I myself of-the speech not shame

1060 durch mînen magetlîchen namen,
for my maidenly name,

sô dunket mich, diu herzeklage,
so seems to-me, the heart's-lament,

die ich durch in ze herzen trage,
which I for him to heart bear,

diu ensî niwan von minnen.
it is only from love.

des wirde ich hier an innen,
of-it become I here at aware,

1065 daz ich im sô gerne wære bî.
that I to-him so gladly were by.

und swaz sô dirre mære sî,
and whatever so of-this tale be,

mir wahset eteswaz hier an,
to-me grows something here on,

daz minne meinete unde man.
that love means and man.

wan swaz ich allen mînen lîp
for whatever I all my life

1070 umbe rehte minnendiu wîp
about truly loving women

und umbe liebe hân vernomen,
and about love have heard,

daz ist mir in mîn herze komen:
that is to-me into my heart come:

der süeze herzesmerze,
the sweet heart-pain,

der vil manec edele herze

which very many-a noble heart

quelt mit süezem smerzen,

torments with sweet pain,

der liget in mînem herzen.«

it lies in my heart.»

1075

The Lovers' Glances and the War

VIII

Once Blanscheflur understands that Riwalin is her heart's joy, she greets him secretly with her eyes, and he, seeing it, answers her glances; the two come to love each other wholeheartedly. When the festival ends, a hostile king invades Mark's land. Mark defeats him, but Riwalin is stabbed in the side with a spear and carried back to Tintajoel half dead. The court laments him, and Blanscheflur, beating her breast in secret, lives only on the hope of seeing him.

Nu daz diu höfsche guote

Now that the courtly good-one

mit ganzlichem muote

with entire spirit

sich in ir herzen des entstuont,

herself in her heart of-it understood,

als die minnenden alle tuont,

as the loving all do,

daz ir geselle Riwalîn

that her companion Riwalin

ir herzen fröude müese sîn,

her heart's joy must be,

ir meiste trôst, ir beste leben:

her greatest comfort, her best life:

1080

si begunde im ouge und ouge geben

she began him eye and eye give

1085 und sach in, swâ sin mohte sehen.

and looked-at him, wherever she-him could see.

swenne ez diu fuoge lie geschehen,

whenever it the fitness let happen,

sô gruozte sî in vil tougen

so greeted she him very secretly

mit inneclîchen ougen.

with inward eyes.

ir senelîche blicke

her yearning glances

1090 die sâhen in vil dicke

they looked him very often

lange unde minneclîchen an.

long and lovingly at.

dô daz der minnende man,

when that the loving man,

ir friunt, begunde merken,

her friend, began notice,

alrêste begunde in sterken

first-of-all began him strengthen

1095 diu minne und ouch sîn trôst an ir;

the love and also his comfort in her;

alrêste enbran sîn herzegir

first-of-all burned his heart's-desire

und sach der süezen allez sider

and looked-at the sweet-one ever since

baltlîcher unde süezer wider,

more-boldly and more-sweetly back,

danne er ie dâ vor getete.

than he ever there before did.

1100 swenne er die state hete,

whenever he the occasion had,

sô gruozte ouch er mit ougen dar.
so greeted also he with eyes thither.

nu sîn diu schœne wart gewar,
now of-it the fair-one became aware,

daz er si meinde als si in,
that he her meant as she him,

dô was ir meistiu sorge hin;
then was her greatest sorrow gone;

wan sî wânde allez ê, daz er
for she thought all before, that he

hin ze ir enhete keine ger.
thither to her had no desire.

nu wiste aber sî wol, daz sîn muot
now knew however she well, that his spirit

hin ze ir was süeze und alse guot,
thither to her was sweet and as good,

als liebes muot ze liebe sol.
as dear-one's spirit to dear-one shall.

daz selbe wiste er an ir wol.
the same knew he of her well.

daz selbe enzunde ir beider sin.
the same kindled their of-both mind.

dâ von begunden si under in
there from began they between them

sich meinen unde minnen
themselves mean and love

mit herzenlîchen sinnen.
with heartfelt senses.

ez ergienc in rehte als man giht:
it went to-them just as one says:

swâ liep in liebes ougen siht,
wherever dear-one in dear-one's eyes looks,

1105

1110

1115

daz ist der minnen fiure

that is of-the love for-fire

ein wahsendiu stiure.

a growing fuel.

Nu Markes hôhgezît ergie

Now Mark's high-feast ended

1120 und sich diu hêrschaft gâr zerlie,

and itself the lordship wholly dispersed,

dô kâmen Marke mære,

then came to-Mark tidings,

daz ein sîn vîent wære,

that a his enemy were,

ein künec, geriten in sîn lant

a king, ridden into his land

mit alsô kreftiger hant,

with so mighty hand,

1125 der in niht schiere tæte wider,

(if)-be him not quickly should-do against,

er bræche im allez daz dernider,

he would-break for-him all that down,

daz er berîten kunde.

whicb he ride-over could.

zehant und an der stunde

at-once and at the hour

besande Marke ein michel her

summoned Mark a great army

1130 und kam in an mit starker wer.

and came him on with strong defense.

er vaht mit ime und gesiget im an

he fought with him and won him on

und sluoc und vienc sô manegen man,

and slew and captured so many-a man,

daz ez von grôzen sælden was,

that it from great fortune was,

der dannen kam oder dâ genas.

who thence came or there survived.

dâ wart der werde Riwalîn

there was the worthy Riwalîn

1135

mit eime sper zer sîten in

with a spear at-the side in

gestochen und sô sêre wunt,

stabbed and so sorely wounded,

daz in die sîne sâ zestunt

that him the his-ones straightway at-once

vür einen halptôten man

for a half-dead man

mit manegem jâmer fuorten dan

with many-a misery led away

1140

hin heim ze Tintajoêle wider.

thither home to Tintajoel back.

dâ leitens in tôtslachen nider.

there laid-they him dead-stricken down.

zehant erschullen mære,

at-once resounded tidings,

Kanêlengres der wære

Kanelengres he were

tôtwunt und in dem strîte erslagen;

death-wounded and in the battle slain;

1145

des wart ein jæmerlîchez klagen

of-that was a pitiful lamenting

in dem hove und in dem lande.

in the court and in the land.

swer sîne tugende erkande,

whoever his virtues knew,

dem was sîn schade von herzen leit.

to-him was his harm from heart sorrowful.

si klagen, daz sîn frumekeit,

they lamented, that his valor,

1150

sîn schoener lîp, sîn sūeziu jugent

his fair body, his sweet youth

sîn wol gelobetiu hêrentugent

his well praised lordly-virtue

sô schiere solte an ime zergân

so quickly should in him perish

und ein sô frûjez ende hân.

and a so early end have.

1155 sîn friunt, der künic Marke,

his friend, the king Mark,

der klagete in alsô starke,

he lamented him so strongly,

daz er durch nie dekeinen man

that he for never any man

sô nâhe gēnde klage gewan.

so near going lament gained.

in weinde manic edel wîp,

him wept many-a noble woman,

1160 manec frouwe klagete sînen lîp;

many-a lady lamented his person;

und swer in ie dâ vor gesach,

and whoever him ever there before saw,

den erbarmete sîn ungemach.

him pitied his discomfort.

swaz aber ir aller swære

whatever however their of-all grief

umbe sînen schaden wære,

for his harm were,

1165 sô was ez iemer eine

so was it ever alone

sîn Blanschefflûr, diu reine,

his Blanschefflur, the pure,

diu höfsche, diu guote,

the courtly, the good,

diu mit durnehtem muote

who with complete spirit

mit ougen und mit herzen

with eyes and with heart

ir herzeliebes smerzen

her heart's-love's pain

1170

beklagete und ouch beweinete;

lamented and also bewept;

und aber, dô sî vereinete

and again, when she was-alone

und sî ze klagene state gewan,

and she to lament occasion gained,

dô gie si sich mit handen an:

then went she herself with hands at:

die sluoc si tûsent stunde dar

them struck she thousand times there

1175

und niwan dar, da ez ir dâ war,

and only there, where it to-her there was,

da engegene dâ daz herze lac,

there against where the heart lay,

dar tete diu schœne manegen slac.

there did the fair-one many-a blow.

sus quelte daz vil sœuze wîp

thus tormented the very sweet woman

ir jungen, schœnen, sœuzen lîp

her young, fair, sweet body

1180

mit alsô klegelîcher nôt,

with so pitiful distress,

daz si einen andern tôt,

that she an other death,

der niht von minnen wære komen,

which not from love were come,

dô hæte vür ir leben genomen
then would-have for her life taken

1185 und wære iedoch verdorben
and would-have yet perished

und in dem leide erstorben,
and in the sorrow died,

wan daz si der trôst labete
except that her the comfort refreshed

und der gedinge ûf habete,
and the expectation up held,

daz si in binamen wolte sehen,
that she him truly would see,

1190 swie sô ez möhte geschehen;
however so it might happen;

und als si in gesæhe,
and when she him should-see,

swaz ir dar nâch geschæhe,
whatever to-her there after should-happen,

daz sî daz allez gerne lite.
that she that all gladly should-suffer.

hie friste sî daz leben mite,
here prolonged she the life with,

1195 biz daz si wider ze sinnen kam
until that she back to senses came

und in ir trahte dô genam,
and into her pondering then took,

wie si in gesehen möhte,
how she him see might,

als ez ir leide töhte.
as it to-her sorrow should-avail.

The Visit to the Wounded

IX

Blanscheflur confides her love to her governess, who reasons that the dying man can do no harm and agrees to help. Dressing Blanscheflur as a beggar woman and presenting her as a woman physician, the governess brings her to Riwalin's room and bars the door. Blanscheflur faints with her cheek on his, then revives and kisses him until love gives him strength; soon afterward she conceives a child by him. Riwalin, near dead from the woman and from love, recovers by God's help.

Sus kam ir in ir sinne

Thus came to-her into her mind

umbe eine ir meisterinne,

about a her mistress,

1200

diu si alle zît und alle wege

who her all time and all ways

hete in ir lêre und in ir pflege

had in her teaching and in her care

und si ûz ir huote nie verlie:

and her out-of her guard never let:

die nam si sunder unde gie,

her took she aside and went,

dâ nieman was niwan si zwô,

where no-one was except they two,

1205

und huop ir klage hin zir alsô,

and raised her lament thither to-her thus,

als sî ie tâten und noch tuont,

as they ever did and still do,

den ir dinc stât als ez ir stuont:

to-whom their matter stands as it to-her stood:

ir ougen über vielen,

her eyes over welled,

- 1210 die heizen trehene vielen
the hot tears fell
 gedîhteclîche und ange
thickly and anxiously
 über ir vil liehtiu wange;
over her very bright cheeks;
 ir hende sî zesamene vielt,
her hands she together folded,
 flêhlîche sî die vûr sich hielt.
beseechingly she them before herself held.
- 1215 »ach mînes lîbes«, sî dô sprach,
»ah of-my life«, she then spoke,
 »ach«, sprach si, »mînes lîbes, ach!
»ab«, spoke she, »of-my life, ab!
 ach, herzeliebiu meisterîn,
ah, heart-dear mistress,
 nu tuo mir dîne triuwe schîn,
now make to-me thy faithfulness manifest,
 der vil und wunder an dir ist!
of-which much and wonder in thee is!
- 1220 und sît du nû sô sælic bist,
and since thou now so blessed art,
 daz al mîn sælde und al mîn rât
that all my fortune and all my counsel
 niwan an dîme râte stât,
only in thy counsel stands,
 sô klage ich dir mîn herzeleit
so lament I to-thee my heart's-sorrow
 ûf alle dîne sælekeit:
upon all thy blessedness:
- 1225 dune helfes mir, sô bin ich tât!«
unless-thou help me, so am I dead!«

»nu, frouwe, waz ist iuwer nôt
»now, lady, what is your distress

und iuwer klegelîchez klagen?«
and your pitiful lamenting?«

»ei, trût, getar ich dirz gesagen?«
»ah, dear-one, dare I to-thee-it say?«

»jâ, liebiu frouwe, sprechet an.«
»yes, dear lady, speak on.«

»mich tœtet dirre tôte man,
»me kills this dead man, 1230

von Parmenîe Riwalîn;
of Parmenie Riwalin;

den sæhe ich gerne, möhte ez sîn,
him would-see I gladly, might it be,

und wiste ich, wie ichz erwürbe,
and knew I, how I-it should-win,

ê danne er volle erstürbe;
before than be fully should-die;

wan leider ern mac niht genesen.
for alas he may not recover. 1235

maht dû mir dar zuo guot gewesen,
(if)-canst thou to-me there to good be,

ich engân dir niemer nihtes abe,
I grudge thee never anything off;

die wîle und ich daz leben habe.«
the while and I the life have.«

Diu meisterinne gedâhte dô:
The mistress thought then:

»gestate ich dirre dinge alsô,
»(if)-allow I of-these things so, 1240

waz mac da schaden gewahsen an?
what may there harm grow on?

wan dirre halptôte man

for this half-dead man

der stirbet morgen oder noch,

he dies tomorrow or yet,

sô hân ich mîner frouwen doch

so have I of-my lady yet

1245 gefristet lîp und êre

preserved life and honor

und bin ir iemer mêre

and am to-her ever more

lieber danne ein ander wîp.«

dearer than an other woman.«

»trûtfrouwe«, sprach si, »lieber lîp,

»dear-lady«, spoke she, »dear life,

iuwer klage ist mir von Herzen leit,

your lament is to-me from heart sorrowful,

1250 und swâ ich iuwer arbeit

and wherever I your hardship

mit mînem lîbe erwenden kan,

with my person avert can,

dâ gezwîvelt niemer an.

there doubt never on.

ich sol selbe gân dar nider

I shall self go there down

und in gesehen und iesâ wider.

and him see and at-once back.

1255 ich sol die stat erkunnen dâ,

I shall the place find-out there,

wie er dâ lige oder wâ,

how he there lie or where,

und ouch der liute nemen war.«

and also of-the people take heed.«

sus kam si in den gebærden dar,

thus came she in the bearing there,

als sî sîn angest wolte klagen

as-if she his danger would lament

und begunde im tougenliche sagen,

and began him secretly tell,

1260

ir frouwe wolte in gerne sehen,

her lady would him gladly see,

daz er ez lieze geschehen

that he it should-let happen

nâch fuogen und nâch êren.

after fitness and after honors.

sus begunde sî dô kêren

thus began she then turn

mit disen mæren wider dan.

with these tidings back away.

1265

si nam die maget und leite ir an

she took the maiden and laid to-her on

eines armen betewîbes kleit.

of-a poor beggar-woman's clothes.

ir antlützes schönheit

her face's beauty

mit dicken rîsen sî verbant

with thick veils she bound

und nam ir frouwen an ir hant

and took her lady by her band

1270

und kam ze Riwalîne.

and came to Riwalin.

nu hete ouch er die sîne

now had also he the his-ones

al besunder ûz getriben

all apart out driven

und was al eine beliben.

and was all alone remained.

er sagete in allen unde jach,

he said to-them all and declared,

1275

einöte wære sîn gemach.

solitude were his comfort.

ouch jach diu meisterinne,

also declared the mistress,

sî bræhte ein arzâtinne,

she should-bring a woman-physician,

und erwarp, daz man si zuo zim liez.

and obtained, that one her to him let.

1280 daz slôz si vür die tür dô stiez,

the lock she before the door then pushed,

»nu frouwe«, sprach si, »sehet in!«

»now lady«, spoke she, »see him!«

und sî diu schoene diu gie hin,

and she the fair-one she went thither,

und dô si im under ougen sach,

and when she him under eyes looked,

»ach«, sprach si, »hiute und iemer ach,

»ab«, spoke she, »today and ever ah,

1285 ôwe daz ich ie wart geborn!

alas that I ever was born!

wie ist mîn trôst alsus verlorn!«

how is my comfort thus lost!«

Alsus neig ir dô Riwalîn

Thus bowed to-her then Riwalin

vil kûme, als ez dô mohte sîn

very barely, as it then could be

von eime tôtsiechem man.

from a death-sick man.

1290 ouch sach si daz vil lützel an

also looked she that very little at

und nam es harte kleine war,

and took of-it very little heed,

wan saz et blintlîchen dar

but sat just blindly there

und leite Riwalîne

and laid to-Riwalin

ir wange an daz sîne,

her cheek on the his,

biz daz ir aber dô beide

until that to-them again then both

1295

von liebe und ouch von leide

from love and also from sorrow

ir lîbes kraft dâ von gesweich.

their body's strength there from failed.

ir rôsevarwer munt wart bleich;

her rose-colored mouth became pale;

ir lîch diu kam vil garwe

her complexion it came very wholly

von der vil liechten varwe,

from the very bright color,

1300

diu dâ vor an ir lîbe lac.

which there before on her body lay.

ir klâren ougen wart der tac

to-her bright eyes became the day

trûebe unde vinsten als diu naht.

troubled and dark as the night.

sus lac si in der unmaht

thus lay she in the swoon

und âne sinne lange,

and without senses long,

1305

ir wange an sînem wange,

her cheek on his cheek,

gelîche als ob si wære tât.

just as if she were dead.

nu daz si dô von dirre nôt
now that she then from this distress

ein lützel wider ze krefte kam,
a little back to strength came,

1310 ir trût si an ir arm dô nam
her beloved she in her arm then took

und leite ir munt an sînen munt
and laid her mouth on his mouth

und kuste in hundert tûsent stunt
and kissed him hundred thousand times

in einer kleinen stunde,
in a little hour,

unz ime ir munt enzunde
until to-him her mouth kindled

1315 sinne unde kraft zer minne,
senses and strength to-the love,

wan minne was dar inne.
for love was there within.

ir munt der tete in fröudehaft,
her mouth it made him joyful,

ir munt der brâhte im eine kraft,
her mouth it brought to-him a strength,

daz er daz keiserliche wîp
that he the imperial woman

1320 an sînen halptôten lîp
to his half-dead body

vil nâhe und inneclîche twanc.
very close and inwardly pressed.

dâ nâch sô was vil harte unlanc,
there after so was very quite not-long,

unz daz ir beider wille ergie
until that their of-both will came-about

und daz vil süeze wîp enphie
and the very sweet woman received

ein kint von sînem lîbe. 1325
a child from his body.

ouch was er von dem wîbe
also was he from the woman

und von der minne vil nâch tôt;
and from the love very nearly dead;

wan daz im got half ûz der nôt,
except that him God helped out-of the distress,

sone kunde er niemer sîn genesen.
so could he never be recovered.

sus genas er, wande ez solte wesen. 1330
thus recovered he, for it should be.

The Summons Home

X

Blanscheffur, laden with love and with a child, thinks only of her lover, and the two live in secret joy. Then messengers tell Riwalin that his enemy Morgan has summoned a strong army into his land. Blanscheffur faints at the news and curses love's fleeting joy, then faints again when Riwalin comes to take his leave. She tells him her three griefs: she is with child, her brother will have her put to death, and if he spares her, he will disinherit her, and two kingdoms will share her disgrace.

Sus was, daz Riwalîn genas,

Thus was, that Riwalin recovered,

und Blanscheffûr diu schœne was

and Blanscheffur the fair was

von ime entladen und beladen

by him unladen and laden

mit zweier hande herzeschaden:

with of-two kinds heart-harm:

1335 grôz leit lie si bî dem man

great sorrow left she with the man

unde truoc daz grœzer dan;

and bore the greater away;

si lie dâ senede herzenôt

she left there yearning heart's-distress

und truoc mit ir von dan den tôt;

and bore with her from thence the death;

die nôt si mit der minne lie,

the distress she with the love left,

1340 den tôt si mit dem kinde enphie.

the death she with the child received.

und iedoch, swie sô sî genas,

and yet, however so she recovered,

in swelher wîse sô si was

in whichever way so she was

von ime entladen und beladen

by him unladen and laden

sô mit frumen sô mit schaden

as with profit as with harm

sone sach si doch niht anders an

so looked she yet nothing else at

1345

wan liebe liebe und lieben man.

than dear love and dear man.

weder kint noch tôdes ungeschiht

neither child nor of-death mishap

enwiste si an ir lîbe niht:

knew she in her body at-all:

minne unde man wiste si wol

love and man knew she well

und tete rehte, als der lebende sol

and did rightly, as the living shall

1350

und als der minnende tuot.

and as the loving does.

ir herze, ir sin, ir gernder muot

her heart, her mind, her desiring spirit

lac niwan an Riwalîne.

lay only on Riwalin.

dâ wider lac ouch der sîne

there against lay also the his

an ir und an ir minnen.

on her and on her love.

1355

si heten in ir sinnen

they had in their senses

beide eine liebe und eine ger.

both one love and one desire.

sus was er sî und sî was er,

thus was he she and she was he,

er was ir und sî was sîn;

he was hers and she was his;

1360 dâ Blanscheflûr, dâ Riwalîn,

there Blanscheflur, there Riwalin,

dâ Riwalîn, dâ Blanscheflûr,

there Riwalin, there Blanscheflur,

dâ beide, dâ lêal amûr.

there both, there loyal love.

ir leben was vil gemeine dô,

their life was very in-common then,

sî wâren mit einander frô

they were with each-other glad

1365 und hôhten ir gemüete

and raised their spirits

mit vil gemeiner güete.

with very shared goodness.

und swenne sî mit fuogen

and whenever they with fitness

ir state inein getruogen,

their occasion together bore,

sô was ir werltwunne vol,

so was their world-bliss full,

1370 sô was in sanfte und alsô wol,

so was to-them soft and so well,

daz si enhæten niht ir leben

that they would-have not their life

umb kein ander künicrîche gegeben.

for any other kingdom given.

Doch werte daz unlange,

Yet lasted that not-long,

wan in ir anevange,

for in their beginning,

do si allerbeste lebeten 1375
when they very-best lived

und in dem wunsche swebeten,
and in the wish hovered,

dô kâmen Riwalîne boten,
then came to-Riwalin messengers,

Morgân sîn vîent hæte geboten
Morgan his enemy had summoned

ein starke samenunge in sîn lant.
a strong gathering into his land.

mit disem mære und al zehant 1380
with this tidings and all at-once

wart Riwalîne ein schif bereit
became for-Riwalin a ship ready

und al sîn dinc dar an geleit,
and all his gear there onto laid,

spîse unde ros, daz allez wart
food and horses, that all was

zehant bereitet an die vart.
at-once prepared for the journey.

Diu minneclîche Blanschefflor 1385
The lovely Blanschefflor

do sî diu leiden mære erfuor
when she the sorrowful tidings learned

umbe den vil herzelieben man,
about the very heart-dear man,

alrêrste gienc ir kumber an:
first-of-all went her grief on:

von herzeleide ir aber geschach,
from heart's-sorrow to-her again happened,

daz sîne gehôrte noch gesach. 1390
that she-not heard nor saw.

ir lîch wart an ir lîbe

her complexion became on her body

als eime tôten wîbe.

as of-a dead woman.

ûz ir munde gie niht mê

out-of her mouth went nothing more

wan daz vil arme wort »owê!«

than the very poor word »alas!«

1395 daz eine sprach si und ouch niht mê.

that one spoke she and also nothing more.

»owê«, sprach si vil lange, »owê!

»alas«, spoke she very long, »alas!

owê nu minne und owê man!

alas now love and alas man!

wie sît ir mich gevallen an

how are you me fallen on

mit alsô maneger arbeit!

with so much hardship!

1400 minne, al der werlde unsælekeit!

love, all of-the world unhappiness!

sô kurziu fröude als an dir ist,

so short joy as in thee is,

sô rehte unstæte sô du bist,

so right unsteady as thou art,

waz minnet al diu werlt an dir?

what loves all the world in thee?

ich sihe doch wol, du lônest ir

I see yet well, thou rewardest it

1405 als der vil valschafte tuot.

as the very false-one does.

dîn ende daz ist niht sô guot,

thy end that is not so good,

als dû der werlde geheizest,

as thou to-the world promisest,

so du sî von êrste reizest

when thou it at first enticest

mit kurzem liebe ûf langez leit.

with short joy to long sorrow.

dîn gespenstigiû trûgeheit,

thy ghostly deceitfulness,

1410

diu in sô valscher sûeze swebet,

whiche in so false sweetness hovers,

diu triuget allez, daz der lebet:

it deceives all, that there lives:

daz ist an mir wol worden schîn.

that is on me well become manifest.

daz al mîn fröude solte sîn,

what all my joy should be,

da von hân ich nû niht mêre

there from have I now nothing more

1415

wan tâtlich herzesêre:

than deathly heart-pain:

mîn trôst vert hin und lât mich hie.«

my comfort goes away and leaves me here.»

In disem klagemære gie

In this lament went

ir trûtgeselle Riwalîn

her dear-companion Riwalin

mit weinendem herzen in

with weeping heart in

1420

und wolte nemen urloup von ir.

and would take leave of her.

»frouwe«, sprach er, »gebietet mir,

»lady«, spoke he, »command me,

ich sol und muoz ze lande varn,

I shall and must to land fare,

iuch, schœne, müeze got bewarn!

you, fair-one, may God guard!

- 1425 weset iemer sælic unde gesunt!«
be ever blessed and well!«
 alsus geswant ir anderstunt,
thus swooned she a-second-time,
 aber viel si von der herzenôt
again fell she from the heart's-distress
 vor ime in unmaht und vür tôt
before him in swoon and for dead
 in ir meisterinne schôz.
into her mistress's lap.
- 1430 der ir getriuwe senegenôz
the her faithful yearning-companion
 dô der daz michel ungemach
when he the great discomfort
 an sînem herzeliebe ersach,
in his heart's-love saw,
 er leiste ir wol gesellekeit;
he gave her well companionship;
 wan er nam sich ir senede leit
for he took himself her yearning sorrow
- 1435 vil inneclîche mit ir an.
very inwardly with her on.
 sîn varwe und al sîn kraft began
his color and all his strength began
 an sînem lîbe swachen.
in his body weaken.
 nâch klegelîchen sachen
after pitiful manner
 gesaz er riuweclîchen nider
sat he ruefully down
- 1440 und erbeite kûme, daz si wider
and waited barely, that she back
 und also vil ze kreften kam,
and so much to strength came,

daz er si dô mit handen nam

that he her then with hands took

und hielt daz fröudelôse wîp

and held the joyless woman

vil suozecliche an sînen lîp

very sweetly to his body

und kuste ie ze etlicher stunt

and kissed ever at certain times

1445

ir wange, ir ougen unde ir munt

her cheek, her eyes and her mouth

und trûte sî sus unde sô,

and caressed her thus and so,

biz sî ze jungeste dô

until she at last then

ze ir selber kam baz unde baz

to her self came better and better

und ûfreht von ir selber saz.

and upright of her self sat.

1450

Nu Blanschefflûr ze ir selber kam

Now Blanschefflur to her self came

und aber ir friundes war genam,

and again of-her friend beed took,

si sach in jâmerlîchen an.

she looked him pitifully at.

»ach«, sprach si, »sæliger man,

»ah«, spoke she, »blessed man,

wie ist mir sô leide an iu geschehen!

how is to-me so sorrowfully through you happened!

1455

hêrre, wie hân ich iuch gesehen

lord, how have I you seen

ze sô vil maneger herzeklage,

to so very many heart's-lament,

als ich an mînem herzen trage

as I in my heart bear

von iu, von iuweren schulden!

from you, from your guilt!

1460 getorste ich ez mit hulden

dared I it with favor

hin ziu gereden, sô möhtet ir

thither to-you say, so might you

friuntlicher tuon und baz ze mir.

more-friendly do and better to me.

hêrre unde friunt, ich hân von iu

lord and friend, I have from you

manec leit und vor den allen driu,

many-a sorrow and before them all thre,

1465 diu toedic und unwendic sint.

which deadly and unavoidable are.

daz eine ist, daz ich trage ein kint;

the one is, that I bear a child;

des entrûwe ich niemer genesen,

of-it trust I never recover,

got enwelle mîn gehelfe wesen.

God unless-will my helper be.

daz ander deist noch mêrre:

the second that-is still greater:

1470 mîn bruoder und mîn hêrre

my brother and my lord

sô der an mir dise ungeschicht

when he on me this mishap

unde ouch sîn selbes laster siht,

and also his own disgrace sees,

der heizet mich verderben

he bids me perish

und lesterliche ersterben.

and shamefully die.

daz dritte ist aber diu meiste nôt
the third is however the greatest distress

1475

und maneges erger danne der tô:
and by-much worse than the death:

ich weiz wol, ob daz wol ergât,
I know well, if that well goes,

daz mich mîn bruoder leben lâ:
that me my brother live lets

und er mich niht ersterbet,
and he me not kills,

daz er mich aber enterbet
that he me yet disinherits

1480

und nimet mir guot und êre,
and takes from-me goods and honor,

sô muoz ich iemer mêre
so must I ever more

unwert und swaches namen sîn.
unworthy and of-mean name be.

dar zuo muoz ich mîn kindelîn,
there to must I my little-child,

daz einen lebenden vater hât,
which a living father has,

1485

ziehen âne vater râ:
raise without father's aid.

und enwolte ich daz niemer geklagen,
and would I that never lament,

solte ich daz laster eine tragen,
should I the disgrace alone bear,

daz mîn vil hôch geslehte

that my very high lineage

1490 und der künic, mîn bruoder, mehte

and the king, my brother, might

des itewîzes unde mîn

of-the reproach and of-me

mit êren ledec und âne sîn.

with honor free and without be.

swenne aber alle, die nu sint,

whenever however all, who now are,

diu mære sagent, ich habe ein kint

the tidings tell, I have a child

1495 erworben kebeslîche,

gained as-a-concubine,

deist disem und jenem rîche,

that-is to-this and to-that kingdom,

Kurnewâle und Engelande,

Cornwall and England,

ein offenbæriu schande.

an open disgrace.

und ouwê, swenne daz geschiht,

and alas, whenever that happens,

1500 daz man mich mit den ougen siht,

that one me with the eyes sees,

daz zwei lant von den schulden mîn

that two lands through the guilt mine

genidert und geswachet sîn,

lowered and weakened are,

sô wære ich eine bezzer tô.

so would-be I alone better dead.

seht, hêrre«, sprach si, »deist diu nô,

look, lord«, spoke she, »that-is the distress,

1505 daz ist diu wernde herzeklage,

that is the lasting heart's-lament,

in der ich alle mîne tage

in which I all my days

mit lebendem lîbe sterben muoz.

with living body die must.

hêrre, iuwer helfe diu entuoz,

lord, your help it unless-does-it,

und got enfüege ez danne alsô,

and God unless-arrange it then so,

sone werde ich niemer frô.«

so become I never glad.»

1510

The Flight to Parmenie

XI

Riwalin offers to stay or to take her with him, and she chooses to steal away. That night she boards his ship, and they sail for Parmenie after he has taken leave of Mark. At home Rual tells him of Morgan's threat, and, told of Blanscheflur, advises Riwalin to marry her in church before priests and laymen. Riwalin does and entrusts her to Rual, who lodges her with his wife at Kanoel. Riwalin falls in the battle against Morgan, and his men bury him with great lament.

»Trûtfrouwe«, sprach er dô ze ir,

»Dear-lady«, spoke he then to her,

»habet ir dekeine nôt von mir,

»(if)-have you any distress from me,

die sol ich bûezen, obe ich mac,

that shall I atone, if I may,

und ouch bewarn vür disen tac,

and also guard beyond this day,

daz iu durch mîne schulde iht mê

that to-you through my guilt any more

leit oder laster ûf erstê.

sorrow or disgrace up arise.

1515

ich hân, swaz her nâch sûle geschehen,

I have, whatever here after shall happen,

sô lieben tac an iu gesehen,

so dear day in you seen,

daz ez unbillîch wære,

that it unfitting were,

1520 ob ir dekeine swære

if you any grief

mit mînem willen soltet tragen.

with my will should bear.

frouwe, ich wil iu rehte sagen

lady, I will to-you rightly tell

mîn herze und allen mînen muot:

my heart and all my purpose:

leit unde liep, übel unde guot

sorrow and joy, ill and good

1525 und allez daz, daz iu geschiht,

and all that, which to-you happens,

dâ von enscheide ich mich niht:

there from part I myself not:

dâ wil ich iemer wesen bî,

there will I ever be by,

swie kumberlîch ez danne sî;

however toilsome it then be;

und biute iu zweier dinge kür,

and offer you of-two things choice,

1530 diu leget iuerm herzen vür:

them lay to-your heart before:

weder ich belîbe oder var.

whether I remain or fare.

hier under nemet selbe war:

here under take self heed:

welt ir, daz ich hie bestê

(if)-want you, that I here stay

und sehe, wie iuwer dinc ergê,

and see, how your matter go,

daz sî. geruochet aber ir

that be. (if)-deign however you

1535

heim unde hinnen varn mit mir,

home and hence fare with me,

ich selbe und allez, daz ich hân,

I self and all, that I have,

daz ist iu iemer undertân.

that is to-you ever subject.

ir erbietet mir ez hie sô wol,

you offer me it here so well,

daz ich es wol gedenken sol

that I of-it well think shall

1540

mit aller slahte guote.

with all kind good.

swes iu nu sî ze muote,

whatever to-you now be to spirit,

frouwe, des bewîset mich,

lady, of-that instruct me,

wan swaz ir welt, daz wil ich.«

for whatever you want, that want I.«

»Genâde, hêrre,« sprach si dô,

»Thanks, lord,« spoke she then,

1545

»ir redet und bietet mirz alsô,

»you speak and offer to-me-it so,

als iu got lônên müeze

as you God reward may

und alse ich iuwer füeze

and as I your feet

iemer gerne suochen sol.

ever gladly seek shall.

- 1550 friunt unde hêrre, ir wizzet wol,
friend and lord, you know well,
 belîbens mac hie niht gesîn:
remaining may here not be:
 mîn angest umb mîn kindelîn
my fear for my little-child
 die mac ich leider niht verheltn;
that may I alas not conceal;
 wan möhte et ich mich hin versteln,
but could just I myself away steal,
- 1555 daz wære nû der beste rât
that would-be now the best counsel
 nâch dem dinge, als ez mir stât.
according-to the thing, as it to-me stands.
 friunt hêrre, dar zuo râtet ir.«
friend lord, there to advise you.»
 »nu frouwe«, sprach er, »volget mir:
»now lady«, spoke he, »follow me:
 ze naht, als ich ze schiffe gê,
at night, when I to ship go,
- 1560 sô füeget ir daz, daz ir ê
so arrange you that, that you before
 vil tougenlîche dar sît komen,
very secretly there are come,
 biz daz hân ich urloup genomen,
until that have I leave taken,
 daz ich iuch danne vinde
that I you then find
 bî mînem ingesinde.
by my household.
- 1565 sus werbet! alsô muoz ez sîn.«
thus act! so must it be.»

mit dirre rede kam Riwalîn

with this speech came Riwalin

ze Marke und seite im mære,

to Mark and told him tidings,

waz ime enboten wære

what to-him sent were

umb sîn liut und umb sîn lant.

about his people and about his land.

urloup nam er von ime zehant,

leave took he from him at-once,

1570

dâ nâch von al den sînen.

there after from all the his-ones.

die klageten Riwalînen,

they lamented Riwalin,

daz er die klage ê nie gesach,

that he the lament before never saw,

diu dô und dâ nâch ime geschach.

which then and there after to-him happened.

manec segen wart im nâch gegeben,

many-a blessing was to-him after given,

1575

daz got sîn êre und sîn leben

that God his honor and his life

geruochte in sînem schirme hân.

should-deign in his protection have.

nu ez an die naht begunde gân

now it toward the night began go

und er ze sînem schiffe kam

and he to his ship came

und al sîn dinc dar an genam,

and all his gear there onto took,

1580

do vand er sîne frouwen dâ,

then found he his lady there,

die schoenen Blanscheffûr. iesâ
the fair Blanscheffur. at-once

sô wart daz schif gestôzen an.
so was the ship pushed off.

alsus sô fuoren sî von dan.
thus so went they from thence.

1585 Nu Riwalîn ze lande kam
Now Riwalin to land came

und die vil grôzen nôt vernam,
and the very great distress learned,

die Morgân hete ûf in gewant
which Morgan had upon him turned

mit überkrefteclîcher hant,
with overpowering hand,

sînen marschalc er besande,
his marshal he summoned,

1590 an dem er triuwe erkande,
in whom he faithfulness knew,

an dem sîn meister trôst dô lac,
in whom his chief comfort then lay,

der aller sîner êren pflac
who of-all his honors took-care

über sîn liut und über sîn lant.
over his people and over his land.

daz was Rûal li foitenant,
that was Rual the lieutenant,

1595 der êren und der triuwe ein habe,
he of-honors and of-the faithfulness a haven,

der nie gewancte an triuwen abe;
who never wavered in faithfulness off;

der seite im aller hande,
he told him of-all kinds,

als er ez wol erkande,
as he it well knew,

waz engeslîcher swære

what of-dreadful grief

dem lande erstanden wære.

to-the land arisen were.

1600

»doch«, sprach er, »sît daz ir enzît

»yet«, spoke he, »since that you in-time

ze trôste uns allen komen sît

to comfort to-us all come are

und iuch got wider gesendet hât,

and you God back sent has,

sô sol es alles werden rât,

so shall of-it all become remedy,

und mugen vil harte wol genesen;

and may very quite well recover;

1605

wir suln nu hôhes muotes wesen,

we shall now of-high spirit be,

unser angest sol nu kleine sîn.«

our fear shall now small be.«

hier under seite im Riwalîn

here under told him Riwalin

die lieben âventiure

the dear adventure

umbe sîne Blanscheffiure.

about his Blanscheffur.

1610

des wart er inneclîche frô.

of-that became he inwardly glad.

»ich sihe wol, hêrre«, sprach er dô,

»I see well, lord«, spoke he then,

»iuwer êre wahset alle wîs,

»your honor grows all ways,

iuwer werdekeit und iuwer prîs,

your worthiness and your prize,

iuwer fröude und iuwer wunne,

your joy and your bliss,

1615

diu stîget als diu sunne.

it climbs as the sun.

irne möhtet ûf der erden

you might on the earth

von wîbe niemer werden

from woman never become

sô hôhes namen als von ir.

so of-high name as from her.

1620 von danne, hêrre, volget mir:

from thence, lord, follow me:

habe si wol ze iu getân,

(if)-has she well to you done,

des sult ir sî geniezen lân.

of-that shall you her enjoy let.

so wir unser dinc nu geenden,

when we our matter now finish,

die nôt von uns gewenden,

the distress from us avert,

1625 diu uns nû ze rucke lît,

which on-us now to back lies,

so gebietet eine hôhgezît

so command a high-feast

wol hêrlîche unde rîche:

very splendid and rich:

dâ nemet si offenlîche

there take her openly

vor mâgen und vor mannen ze ê.

before kinsmen and before vassals to marriage.

1630 und râte zwâre, daz ir ê

and advise truly, that you before

ze kirchen ir geruochet jehen,

at church to-her deign acknowledge,

da ez pfaffen unde leien sehen,

where it priests and laymen see,

der ê nâch kristenlichem site:
of-the marriage after Christian custom:

dâ sæleget ir iuch selben mite
there bless you yourselves self with

und wizzet wærlîchen daz,
and know truly that, 1635

iuwer dinc sol iemer deste baz
your matter shall ever the better

ze êren und ze guote ergân.«
to honors and to good go.«

nu daz geschach, daz was getân,
now that happened, that was done,

daz er des alles vollekam;
that he of-it all fulfilled;

und als er sî dô ze ê genam,
and when he her then to marriage took, 1640

er bevalch si hant von hande
he commended her hand from hand

dem getriuwen Foitenande.
to-the faithful Lieutenant.

der fuorte sî ze Kanoël
he led her to Kanoel

ûf daz selbe kastêl,
onto the same castle,

nâch dem sîn hêrre, als ich ez las,
after which his lord, as I it read, 1645

Kanêlengres genennet was,
Kanelengres named was,

Kanêl nâch Kanoêle.
Kanel after Kanoel.

ûf dem selben kastêle
on the same castle

hete er dô sîn selbes wîp,
had he then his own wife,

- 1650 ein wîp, diu muot unde lîp
a woman, who spirit and body
 mit wîplîcher stæte
with womanly constancy
 der werlt gewerldet hæte.
to-the world worlded had.
 der bevalch er sîne frouwen dô
to-her commended he his lady then
 und schuof ir ir gemach alsô,
and arranged for-her her comfort so,
- 1655 als ez ir namen wol gezam.
as it to-her name well befitted.
 nu Rûal wider zem hêrren kam,
now Rual back to-the lord came,
 dô wurden sî zwêne under in zwein
then became they two between them two
 umbe ir angest inein,
about their fear together,
 alse ez in dô was gewant.
as it to-them then was turned.
- 1660 si sanden über al ir lant
they sent over all their land
 und samenten ir ritterschaft;
and gathered their knighthood;
 als ir state und al ir kraft
as their occasion and all their strength
 die kêrten sî niwan ze wer.
they turned they only to defense.
 alsus kâmen sî mit her
thus came they with army
- 1665 Morgâne engegene geriten.
to-Morgan toward ridden.

ouch wart ir harte wol gebiten
also was of-them very well waited

von Morgâne und von den sînen.
by Morgan and by the his-ones.

si enphiengen Riwalînen
they received Riwalin

mit einer herten vehte.
with a hard fight.

hei waz dâ guoter knechte 1670
hey what there of-good squires

gevellet unde geveiget wart!
filled and doomed was!

wie lützel der dâ wart gespart!
how few of-them there was spared!

wie manic man kam dâ ze nôt,
how many-a man came there to distress,

und wie vil maneger lac dâ tôt
and how very many-a lay there dead

und wunt von ietwederm her! 1675
and wounded from each army!

an dirre veigen lantwer
in this fated land-defense

wart der vil klagebære erslagen,
was the very lamentable slain,

den al diu werlt wol solte klagen,
whom all the world well should lament,

ob klegelîchiu swære
if lamentable grief

nâch tôde nütze wære. 1680
after death useful were.

Kanêlengres der guote,
Kanelengres the good,

der ritterlîchem muote

who to-knightly spirit

noch hêrren tugende an keiner stete

nor lord's virtue in no place

nie fuoz noch halben wanc getete,

never foot nor half step did,

1685 der lac dâ jâmerlîchen tôt.

he lay there pitifully dead.

iedoch in aller dirre nôt

yet in all this distress

kâmen di sîne über in

came the his-ones over him

und brâhten in mit nœten hin.

and brought him with difficulty away.

mit maneger klage fuorten sin dan

with many-a lament led they-him away

1690 und bestatten in als einen man,

and buried him as a man,

der minner noch mêre

who less nor more

niwan ir aller êre

except their of-all honor

mit ime dô fuorte hin ze grabe.

with him then led thither to grave.

daz ich nu vil von ungehabe

that I now much of dismay

1695 und von ir jâmer sagete,

and of their misery should-tell,

waz iegelîcher klagete,

what each-one lamented,

waz solte daz? ez wære unnôt.

what should that? it would-be needless.

si wâren alle mit im tôten
they were all with him dead

an êren unde an guote,
in honors and in goods,

an allem dem muote,
in all the spirit,

der guoten liuten solte geben
which to-good people should give

sælde unde sæleclîchez leben.
fortune and blessed life.

1700

The Death of Blanscheflur

XII

When Blanscheflur hears of Riwalin's death, she cannot weep or speak; for four days she lies in torment and then gives birth to a son, and dies. The poet asks God's grace for her, and praises the loyalty of Rual and his wife, which outlasted their lord's death. They hide the child and give out that it died with its mother. The land mourns threefold, and fears Morgan besides; Blanscheflur is buried amid great lament, which the poet refuses to lengthen.

Diz ist geschehen, ez muoz nu sîn:
This is happened, it must now be:

er ist tôten der guote Riwalîn;
he is dead the good Riwalin;

da enhœret nû niht mêre zuo
there belongs now nothing more to

wan eine, daz man umbe in tuo,
except alone, that one for him do,

als mit rehte umbe einen tôten man.
as with right for a dead man.

da enist doch nû niht anders an,
there is yet now nothing else in,

1705

man sol und muoz sich sîn bewegen,
one shall and must oneself of-him resign,

1710 und sol sîn got von himele pflegen,
and shall of-him God from heaven take-care,

der edeler herzen nie vergaz;
who of-noble hearts never forgot;

und sul wir sprechen vûrbaz,
and shall we speak further,

wie ez umbe Blanscheffiure kam.
how it about Blanscheffur came.

dô diu vil schœne vernam
when the very fair-one learned

1715 diu klagebæren mære,
the lamentable tidings,

wie dô ir herzen wære?
how then to-her heart were?

got hêrre, daz solt dû bewarn,
God lord, that shalt thou guard,

daz wir daz iemer ervarn.
that we that ever experience.

ich enhân dâ keinen zwîvel an,
I have there no doubt in,

1720 gewan ie wîp durch lieben man
gained ever woman for dear man

tôtlichen herzesmerzen,
deathly heart-pain,

dern wære ouch in ir herzen.
it were also in her heart.

daz was tôtliches leides vol.
that was of-deathly sorrow full.

sie bewærte al der werlde wol,
she proved to-all the world well,

1725 daz ir sîn tôt ze herzen gie.
that to-her his death to heart went.

ir ougen diu enwurden nie
her eyes they became never

in allem disem leide naz.
in all this sorrow wet.

got hêrre, wie kam daz,
God lord, how came that,

daz dâ niht wart geweinet?
that there not was wept?

dâ was ir herze ersteinet;
there was her heart turned-to-stone;

1730

da enwas niht lebes inne
there was nothing of-life within

niwan diu lebende minne
except the living love

und daz vil lebelîche leit,
and the very lively sorrow,

daz lebende ûf ir leben streit.
which living against her life strove.

geklagete si aber ir hêrren iht
lamented she however her lord at-all

1735

mit klageworten? nein si niht:
with lament-words? no she not:

si erstummete an der stunde,
she became-dumb at the hour,

ir klage starp in ir munde;
her lament died in her mouth;

ir zunge, ir munt, ir herze, ir sin,
her tongue, her mouth, her heart, her mind,

daz was allez dô dâ hin.
that was all then there gone.

1740

diu schœne enklagete dô nimê,
the fair-one lamented then no-more,

sine sprach dô weder ach noch wê;
she spoke then neither ah nor woe;

si seig et nider unde lac

she sank just down and lay

quelnde unz an den vierden tac

tormented until on the fourth day

1745 erbermeclicher danne ie wîp.

more-pitifully than ever woman.

si want sich unde brach ir lîp

she writhed herself and broke her body

sus unde sô, her unde dar

thus and so, hitber and thitber

und treip daz an, biz sî gebar

and drove that on, until she bore

ein sünelîn mit maneger nôt.

a little-son with many-a distress.

1750 seht, daz genas, und lac si tât.

see, that survived, and lay she dead.

Owê der ougenweide,

Alas the eye-pasture,

dâ man nâch leidem leide

where one after sorrowful sorrow

mit leiderem leide

with sorrier sorrow

siht leider ougenweide!

sees sorrier eye-pasture!

1755 Der êre an Riwalîne lac,

Whose honor in Riwalin lay,

der er nâch grôzen êren pflac,

which he after great honors took-care-of,

die wîle ez got wolte,

the while it God would,

daz er ir pflegen solte:

that he of-it take-care should:

der leit was leider al ze grôz

their sorrow was alas all too great

und alles leides übergênôz,

and of-all sorrow surpassing,

1765

wan al ir trôst und al ir kraft,

for all their comfort and all their strength,

ir tuon und al ir ritterschaft,

their doing and all their knighthood,

ir êre und al ir werdekeit,

their honor and all their worthiness,

daz alles was dô hin geleit.

that all was then away laid.

sîn tôst was aber wol lobelich,

his death was however well praiseworthy,

1765

der ir ze sêre erbermeclîch.

that to-them too sorely pitiful.

swie schedelîch diu swære

however harmful the grief

liute unde lande wære,

to-people and lands were,

diu von ir hêren tôde kam,

which from their lord's death came,

ez enwas doch niht sô klagesam,

it was yet not so lamentable,

1770

sô daz man dise quelnde nôst

as that one this tormenting distress

und den erbermeclîchen tôst

and the pitiful death

an dem vil süezen wîbe sach.

in the very sweet woman saw.

ir jâmer unde ir ungemach

her misery and her discomfort

beklage ein ieclic sâlic man;

lament an each blessed man;

1775

und swer von wîbe ie muot gewan
and whoever from woman ever spirit gained

oder iemer wil gewinnen,
or ever will gain,

der trahte in sînen sinnen,
he consider in his senses,

wie lîhte misselinge
how easily mischance

1780 an sus getânem dinge
in thus made thing

guoten liuten ûf erstât,
to-good people up arises,

wie lîhte ez in ze leide ergât
how easily it to-them to sorrow goes

an frôuden unde an lîbe;
in joys and in body;

und sî dem reinen wîbe
and be to-the pure woman

1785 genâden wünschende umbe got,
graces wishing from God,

daz sîn gûete und sîn gebot
that his goodness and his command

ir helfe, ir trôst geruoche sîn!
her help, her comfort deign be!

und sagen wir umbe daz kindelîn,
and tell we about the little-child,

daz vater noch muoter hete,
that father nor mother had,

1790 swaz got mit dem getete!
whatever God with it did!

Riuwe unde stætiu triuwe
Rue and steadfast faithfulness

nâch friundes tôde ie niuwe,
after friend's death ever new,

dâ ist der friunt ie niuwe:

there is the friend ever new:

daz ist diu meiste triuwe.

that is the greatest faithfulness.

Swer nâch dem friunde riuwe hât,

1795

Whoever after the friend rue has,

nâch tôde triuwe an ime begât,

after death faithfulness on him performs,

daz ist vor allem lône,

that is before all reward,

deist aller triuwe ein krône.

that-is of-all faithfulness a crown.

mit der selben krône was

with the same crown was

gekroenet dô, als ich ez las,

1800

crowned then, as I it read,

der marschalch und sîn sælic wîp,

the marshal and his blessed wife,

die beide ein triuwe unde ein lîp

who both one faithfulness and one body

gote und der werlde wâren,

to-God and to-the world were,

des sî guot bilde bâren

of-which they good example bore

beidiu der werlde unde gote,

1805

both to-the world and to-God,

wan si wol nâch gotes gebote

for they well after God's command

ganzlicher triuwe wielten

entire faithfulness wielded

und ouch die wol behielten

and also it well kept

âne alle missewende

without all fault

1810 unz an ir beider ende.

until at their of-both end.

solte ieman ûf der erden

should anyone on the earth

von triuwen halben werden

from faithfulness's sake become

künic oder künigîn,

king or queen,

binamen daz mohten sî wol sîn,

truly that might they well be,

1815 als ich iu von in beiden

as I to-you of them both

wærlîche mac bescheiden,

truly may relate,

wie er gefuor und sî gewarp.

how he fared and she acted.

dô Blanschefflûr, ir frouwe, erstarp

when Blanscheffur, their lady, died

und Riwalîn begraben was,

and Riwalin buried was,

1820 des weisen dinc, der dâ genas,

the orphan's matter, who there survived,

daz gefuor nâch ungenâden wol

that fared after misfortunes well

als des, der vûrbaz komen sol.

as of-one, who further come shall.

der marschalc und diu marschalkîn

the marshal and the marshal's-wife

nâmen daz kleine weiselîn

took the little orphan

und burgen es vil tougen

and bid it very secretly

den liuten von den ougen.

from-the people from the eyes.

si sageten unde hiezen sagen,

they said and bade say,

ir frouwe hæte ein kint getragen,

their lady had a child borne,

daz wære in ir und mit ir tô.

which were in her and with her dead.

von der gedrîeten nô

from the threefold distress

wart aber des landes klage dô mê;

became again of-the land lament then more;

ir klage wart aber dô mê dan ê:

their lament became again then more than before:

klage, daz Riwalîn erstarp,

lament, that Riwalin died,

klage, daz Blanschefflûr verdarp,

lament, that Blanschefflur perished,

klage umb ir beider kindelîn,

lament for their of-both little-child,

an dem ir trôst dô solde sîn,

in which their comfort then should be,

daz daz verdorben wære.

that that perished were.

zuo aller dirre swære

to all this grief

gieng in diu starke vorhte,

went to-them the strong fear,

1825

1830

1835

- 1840 die Morgân an in worhte,
which Morgan on them worked,
 als nâhen alse ir hêrren tât.
as near as their lord's death.
 wan diz daz ist diu meiste nôt,
for this that is the greatest distress,
 die man zer werlde haben mac,
which one in-the world have may,
 swâ sô der man naht unde tac
wherever so the man night and day
- 1845 den tâtvin vor ougen hât,
the deadly-foe before eyes has,
 daz ist diu nôt, diu nâhen gât
that is the distress, which near goes
 und ist ein lebelîcher tât.
and is a living death.
 in aller dirre lebenden nôt
in all this living distress
 wart Blanschefflûr ze grabe getragen.
was Blanschefflur to grave carried.
- 1850 michel jâmer unde klagen
great misery and lamenting
 daz wart begangen ob ir grabe.
that was performed over her grave.
 ir muget wol wîzen, ungehabe
you may well know, dismay
 der was dâ vil und al ze vil.
of-it was there much and all too much.
 nune sol ich aber noch enwil
now shall I however nor will
- 1855 iuwer ôren niht beswâren
your ears not burden
 mit zerbermeclîchen mæren,
with pitiful tales,

wan ez den ôren missehaget,
for it to-the ears displeases,
 swâ man von klage ze vil gesaget;
wherever one of lament too much says;
 und ist vil lützel iht sô guot,
and is very little anything so good,
 ez enswache, ders ze vil getuot.
it unless-weaken, who-it too much does.
 von diu sô lâzen langez klagen
from that so let long lamenting
 und flîzen uns, wie wir gesagen
and strive ourselves, how we tell
 umbe daz verweisete kint,
about the orphaned child,
 von dem diu mære erhaben sint.
of whom the tidings raised are.

1860

Rual and Floraete

XIII

Rual saves the land by submitting its lords to Morgan, and then has his wife Floraete feign a lying-in, so that the child passes for her own son. She loves him as a mother, and the two raise him with unmatched loyalty. At the child's christening Rual names him Tristan, from triste, sadness, for the sorrow of his birth and of his parents' love; the poet shows how the name fits his life. Rual gives out that the child died for fear that Morgan would destroy him and take his land.

- 1865 **Sich treit der werlde sache**
Itself bears of-the world matter
vil ofte zungemache
very often to-discomfort
und aber von ungemache
and again from discomfort
wider ze guoter sache.
back to good matter.
- Rehte in den nœten sol der frume,**
Right in the distresses shall the valiant,
- 1870 **ze swelhem ende ez danne kume,**
to whichever end it then come,
bedenken, wie sîn werde rât.
consider, how of-it become remedy.
die wîle und er daz leben hât,
the while and he the life has,
sô sol er mit den lebenden leben,
so shall he with the living live,
im selben trôst ze lebene geben:
to-him self comfort to living give:
- 1875 **als tete der marschalc Foitenant.**
so did the marshal Lieutenant.
wan ez ime ze sorgen was gewant,
for it to-him to sorrows was turned,
do bedâhte er mitten in der nôt
then considered he in-the-midst in the distress
des landes schaden, sîn selbes tôt;
of-the land harm, his own death;
wan ime diu wer niht tohte
for to-him the defense not availed
- 1880 **noch sich mit wer enmohte**
nor himself with defense could
wider den vînt gefristen,
against the enemy preserve,

dô friste er sich mit listen.

then preserved he himself with cunning.

er sprach die hêren al zehant

he addressed the lords all at-once

über allez sînes hêren lant

over all his lord's land

und brâhte sî ze suone;

and brought them to reconciliation;

wan in was niht ze tuone

for to-them was nothing to do

wan flêhen unde sich ergeben.

except beseech and themselves surrender.

si ergâben guot unde leben

they surrendered goods and life

an Morgânes hulde.

to Morgan's favor.

die hazlîchen schulde

the hateful guilt

under Morgâne und under in

between Morgan and between them

die leiten sî mit listen hin

it laid they with cunning away

und nerten ir liut unde ir lant.

and saved their people and their land.

Der getriuwe marschalc Foitenant

The faithful marshal Lieutenant

fuor heim und sprach sîn sælic wîp

went home and addressed his blessed wife

und bevalch ir verre und an den lîp,

and commended to-her far and on the life,

daz sî sich in leite

that she herself in laid

nâch der gewoneheite,

after the custom,

1885

1890

1895

als ein wîp kindes inne lît,
as a woman of-child within lies,

1900 und daz si nâch der selben zît
and that she after the same time

jæhe unde jehende wære,
should-declare and declaring were,

daz sî daz kint gebære,
that she the child should-bear,

daz ir junchêre solde sîn.
which their young-lord should be.

diu sælige marschalkîn,
the blessed marshal's-wife,

1905 diu guote, diu stæte,
the good, the constant,

diu reine Floræte,
the pure Floraete,

diu wîbes êre ein spiegelglas
who of-woman's honor a mirror

und rehter güete ein gimme was,
and of-right goodness a gem was,

diu was des lîhte gemant,
she was of-it easily reminded,

1910 daz ir doch ze êren was gewant;
which to-her yet to honors was turned;

si stalte ir muot und al ir lîp
she set her spirit and all her body

ze klage und rehte als ein wîp,
to lament and right as a woman,

diu eines kindes sol genesen.
who of-a child shall be-delivered.

si hiez ir kamere und ir wesen
she bade her chamber and her being

stellen unde machen
arrange and make

ze heimelichen sachen;
to private matters;

und wandes ouch erkande wol,
and because-she-it also knew well,

wie man hie zuo gebâren sol,
how one here to behave shall,

dô nam si ir willeklage hier abe:
then took she her willing-lament here off:

si gelihsente grôz ungehabe
she feigned great dismay

an muote unde an lîbe,
in spirit and in body,

gelîch einem wîbe,
like to-a woman,

diu ze solhen nœten gât,
who to such distresses goes,

diu al ir dinc gestellet hât
who all her matter arranged has

ze sus getâner arbeit.
to thus made hardship.

sus wart daz kint zuo ir geleit
thus was the child to her laid

vil tougenlîchen unde alsô,
very secretly and so,

daz ez vil lützel ieman dô
that it very little anyone then

âne eine ir ammen bevant.
except a her nurse found-out.

hie wart ein mære sâ zehant:
here arose a tidings straightway at-once:

1915

1920

1925

1930

diu guote marschalkinne

the good marshal's-wife

læge eines sunes inne.

should-lie of-a son within.

ez was ouch wâr, si tete alsô,

it was also true, she did so,

si lac des sunes inne dô,

she lay of-the son within then,

1935 der ir sunlîcher triuwe pflac

who to-her of-filial faithfulness took-care

unz an ir beider endetac.

until on their of-both end-day.

daz selbe süeze kint truoc ir

the same sweet child bore to-her

als süezlîche Kindes gir,

as sweetly of-child's desire,

als ein kint sîner muoter sol,

as a child to-its mother shall,

1940 und was daz billich unde wol.

and was that fitting and well.

si leite ouch allen ir sin

she laid also all her mind

mit muoterlîcher liebe an in

with motherly love on him

und was des alsô stæte,

and was of-it so constant,

als ob sî in selbe ie hæte

as if she him self ever had

1945 under ir brüsten getragen.

under her breasts borne.

als wir daz mære hœren sagen,

as we the tale hear say,

sone geschach ez weder sît noch ê,

so happened it neither since nor before,

daz ein man und ein wîp ie mê
that a man and a woman ever more

mit solher liebe ir hêrren zugen,
with such love their lord raised,

als wir her nâch erkennen mugen
as we here after perceive may 1950

an disem selben mære,
in this same tale,

wie vaterlîche swære
what fatherly grief

und wie vil manege arbeit
and what very much hardship

der getriuwe marschalch durch in leit.
the faithful marshal for him suffered.

Nu daz diu guote marschalkîn
Now that the good marshal's-wife 1955

der nôt genesen solte sîn
of-the distress delivered should be

und nâch ir sehs wochen,
and after her six weeks,

als den frouwen ist besprochen,
as for-the ladies is prescribed,

des suns ze kirchen solte gân,
with-the son to church should go,

von dem ich her gesaget hân,
of whom I hitherto told have, 1960

si selbe in an ir arm nam
she self him in her arm took

und truog in suoze, als ir gezam,
and carried him sweetly, as her befitted,

mit ir zem gotes hûse alsô.
with her to-the God's house so.

und als si ir inleite dô
and when she her churching then

1965 goteliche hete enpfangen
godly had received

und was von opher gegangen
and was from offering gone

mit schœnem ingesinde,
with fair household,

dô was dem kleinen kinde
then was for-the little child

der heilige touf bereit,
the holy baptism ready,

1970 durch daz ez sîne kristenheit
so that it its Christianity

in gotes namen enpfinge,
in God's name should-receive,

swie ez ime dar nâch ergienge,
however it to-him there after should-go,

daz er doch kristen wære.
that he yet Christian were.

nu daz sîn toufære
now that his baptizer

1975 alles sînes dinges was bereit,
of-all his matter was ready,

nâch touflicher gewoneheit
after baptismal custom

er frâgete umb daz kindelîn,
he asked about the little-child,

wie sîn name solte sîn.
how its name should be.

diu höfsche marschalkîn gie dan

the courtly marshal's-wife went away

und sprach vil tougenliche ir man

and addressed very secretly her husband

1980

und frâgete in, wie er wolte,

and asked him, how he would,

daz man ez nennen solte.

that one it name should.

der marschalch der sweic lange,

the marshal he kept-silent long,

er trahte ange und ange,

he pondered anxiously and anxiously,

waz namen ime gebære

what name to-him fitting

1985

nâch sînen dingen wære.

according-to his matters were.

hier under sô betrahte er

here under so considered he

des kindes dinc von ende her,

of-the child matter from end hither,

rehte als er hete vernomen,

just as he had heard,

wie sîn dinc allez dar was komen.

how its matter all there was come.

1990

»seht«, sprach er, »frouwe, als ich vernam

»look«, spoke he, »lady, as I heard

von sînem vater, wie ez dem kam

of his father, how it to-him came

umbe sîne Blanscheffiure,

about his Blanscheffur,

mit wie vil maneger triure

with how very much sadness

ir gernder wille an ime ergie,

her desiring will on him befell,

1995

wie sî diz kint mit triure enpfie,
how she this child with sadness received,

mit welher triure sîz gewan,
with what sadness she-it bore,

sô nenne wir in Tristan.«
so name we him Tristan.«

nu heizet triste triure,
now means triste sadness,

2000 und von der âventiure
and from the adventure

sô wart daz kint Tristan genant,
so was the child Tristan named,

Tristan getoufet al zehant.
Tristan baptized all at-once.

von triste Tristan was sîn name;
from triste Tristan was his name;

der name was ime gevallesame
the name was to-him fitting

2005 und alle wîs gebære:
and all ways suitable:

daz kiesen an dem mære.
that perceive in the tale.

sehen wie trûreclîch ez was,
see how sad it was,

dâ sîn sîn muoter genas;
where of-him his mother was-delivered;

sehen wie fruo im arbeit
see how early to-him hardship

2010 und nôt ze rucke wart geleit;
and distress to back was laid;

sehen wie trûreclîch ein leben
see how sad a life

ime ze lebene wart gegeben;
to-him to living was given;

sehen an den trûreclîchen tât,
see at the sad death,

der alle sîne herzenôt
which all his heart's-distress

mit einem ende beslôz,
with one end closed, 2015

daz alles tôdes übergênôz
that of-all death surpassing

und aller triure ein galle was.
and of-all sadness a gall was.

diz mære der daz ie gelas,
this tale who that ever read,

der erkennet sich wol, daz der name
he perceives himself well, that the name

dem lebene was gehellesame.
to-the life was fitting. 2020

er was reht, alse er hiez, ein man
he was right, as he was-called, a man

und hiez reht, alse er was, Tristan.
and was-called right, as he was, Tristan.

und swer nu gerne hâte erkant,
and whoever now gladly would-have known,

durch welhe liste Foitenant
through what cunning Lieutenant

daz hieze sagen ze mære,
that should-bid say to tale, 2025

daz Tristan daz kint wære
that Tristan the child were

von der geburteclichen nôt
from the birth-giving distress

in sîner tôten muoter tât,
in his dead mother dead,

den sulen wir ez wizzen lân,
to-him shall we it know let,

- 2030 ez wart durch triuwe getân,
it was through faithfulness done,
 der getriuwe tete ez umbe daz,
the faithful-one did it for that,
 er vorhte Morgânes haz,
he feared Morgan's hatred,
 ob er daz kint dâ wiste,
if he the child there knew,
 daz er ez sô mit liste
that he it as with cunning
- 2035 sô mit gewalte verdarbte,
as with force should-destroy,
 daz lant an ime entarbte.
the land from him should-disinherit.
 durch daz nam der getriuwe man
for that took the faithful man
 ze kinde sich den weisen an
to child himself the orphan on
 und zôch ez alsô schône,
and raised it so beautifully,
- 2040 daz ime diu werlt ze lône
that to-him the world to reward
 der gotes genâden wûnschen sol;
the God's graces wish shall;
 daz verdiente er an dem weisen wol.
that deserved he in the orphan well.

Tristan's Schooling

XIV

Floraete keeps the child in tender care until his seventh year, when Rual sends him abroad with a wise tutor to learn foreign languages and letters. So his freedom ends and his cares begin. He learns more books than any child before him, plays every stringed instrument, and learns to ride with shield and spear, to fence, wrestle, run, leap, and hunt. At fourteen Rual brings him home to travel the land, and everyone loves him for his virtue.

Nu daz daz kint getoufet wart,

Now that the child baptized was,

nâch kristenlichem site bewart,

after Christian custom guarded,

diu tugentrîche marschalkîn

the virtue-rich marshal's-wife

2045

nam aber ir liebez kindelîn

took again her dear little-child

in ir vil heimelîche pflege:

into her very private care:

si wolde wizzen alle wege

she would know all ways

und sehen, ob ime sîn sache

and see, whether to-him his matter

stüende ze gemache.

should-stand to comfort.

2050

sîn süeziu muoter leite an in

his sweet mother laid on him

mit alsô süezem flîze ir sin,

with so sweet diligence her mind,

daz sî ime des niht engunde,

that she to-him of-it not granted,

daz er ze keiner stunde

that he at no hour

2055 unsanfte nider getræte.

roughly down should-tread.

nu sî daz mit im hæte

now she that with him had

getriben unz an sîn sibende jâr,

driven until to his seventh year,

daz er wol rede und ouch gebâr

that he well speech and also bearing

vernemen kunde und ouch vernam,

understand could and also understood,

2060 sîn vater der marschalch in dô nam

his father the marshal him then took

und bevalch in einem wîsen man;

and commended him to-a wise man;

mit dem sante er in iesâ dan

with him sent he him at-once away

durch fremede sprâche in fremediû lant;

for foreign speech into foreign lands;

und daz er aber al zehant

and that he however all at-once

2065 der buoche lêre anvienge

of-the books teaching should-begin

und den ouch mite gienge

and them also with should-go

vor aller slahte lêre.

before of-all kind teaching.

daz was sîn êrstiu kêre

that was his first turning

ûz sîner frîheite.

out-of his freedom.

- dô trat er in daz geleite 2070
then stepped he into the escort
- betwungenlicher sorgen,
of-constrained cares,
- die ime dâ vor verborgen
which to-him there before hidden
- und vor behalten wâren.
and before kept were.
- in den ûfblüenden jâren,
in the up-blooming years,
- dô al sîn wunne solte enstân, 2075
when all his bliss should arise,
- dô er mit fröuden solte gân,
when he with joys should go,
- in sînes lebenes begin
in his life's beginning
- dô was sîn beste leben hin:
then was his best life gone:
- dô er mit fröuden blüen began,
when he with joys bloom began,
- dô viel der sorgen rîfe in an, 2080
then fell of-the cares frost him on,
- der maneger jugende schaden tuot,
which to-many youth harm does,
- und darte im sîner fröuden bluot.
and withered to-him his joy's blossom.
- in sîner êrsten frîheit
in his first freedom
- wart al sîn frîheit hin geleit.
was all his freedom away laid.
- der buoche lêre und ir getwanc 2085
the books' teaching and their constraint
- was sîner sorgen anevanc.
was of-his cares beginning.

und iedoch, dô er ir began,
and yet, when he of-them began,

dô leite er sînen sin dar an
then laid he his mind there on

und sînen flîz sô sêre,
and his diligence so sorely,

2090 daz er der buoche mêre
that he of-the books more

gelernete in sô kurzer zît
learned in so short time

danne kein kint ê oder sît.
than any child before or since.

under disen zwein lernungen
among these two learnings

der buoche und der zungen
of-the books and of-the tongues

2095 so vertete er sîner stunde vil
so spent he of-his hours much

an iegellichem seitspil:
on each string-play:

dâ kêrte er spâte unde fruo
there turned he late and early

sîn emzekeit sô sêre zuo,
his zeal so sorely to,

biz er es wunder kunde.
until he of-it wonder knew.

2100 er lernete alle stunde
he learned all hours

hiute diz und morgen daz,
today this and tomorrow that,

hiure wol, ze jâre baz.
this-year well, next year better.

über diz allez lernet er

over this all learned he

mit dem schilte und mit dem sper

with the shield and with the spear

behendeclîche rîten,

deftly ride,

2105

daz ors ze beiden sîten

the horse at both sides

bescheidenlîche rüeren,

skillfully spur,

von sprunge ez freche fûeren,

from leap it boldly lead,

turnieren und leisieren,

tourney and loose-rein,

mit schenkeln sambelieren

with thighs gallop

2110

rehte und nâch ritterlîchem site,

rightly and after knightly custom,

hie bankete er sich ofte mite.

here amused he himself often with.

wol schirmen, starke ringen,

well fence, strongly wrestle,

wol loufen, sêre springen,

well run, sorely leap,

dar zuo schiezen den schaft,

there to shoot the shaft,

2115

daz tete er wol nâch sîner kraft.

that did he well after his strength.

ouch hœre wir diz mære sagen,

also hear we this tale say,

ez gelernete bîrsen unde jagen

it learned stalk and hunt

nie kein man sô wol sô er,

never any man so well as he,

- 2120 ez wære dirre oder der.
it were this-one or that-one.
- aller hande hovespil
of-all kinds court-games
- diu tete er wol und kunde ir vil.
them did he well and knew of-them much.
- ouch was er an dem lîbe,
also was he in the body,
- daz jungelinc von wîbe
that youth from woman
- 2125 nie sæleclicher wart geborn.
never more-blessedly was born.
- sîn dinc was allez ûz erkorn
his matter was all out chosen
- beide an dem muote und an den siten.
both in the spirit and in the manners.
- nu was aber diu sælde undersniten
now was however the fortune interlaced
- mit werndem schaden, als ich ez las,
with lasting harm, as I it read,
- 2130 wan er leider arbeidsælic was.
for he alas hardship-fated was.
- Nu sîn vierzehende jâr vür kam,
Now his fourteenth year forth came,
- der marschalch in hin heim dô nam
the marshal him thither home then took
- und hiez in zallen zîten
and bade him at-all times
- varn unde rîten,
fare and ride,
- 2135 erkunnen liute unde lant,
explore people and land,
- durch daz im rehte würde erkant,
so that to-him rightly should-be known,

wie des landes site wære.

how of-the land custom were.

diz tete der lobebære

this did the praiseworthy-one

sô lobelîchen unde alsô,

so praiseworthily and so,

daz in den zîten unde dô

that in the times and then

2140

in allem dem rîche

in all the kingdom

nie kint sô tugentlîche

never child so virtuously

gelebete alse Tristan.

lived as Tristan.

al diu werlt diu truog in an

all the world it bore him on

friundes ouge und holden muot,

friend's eye and gracious spirit,

2145

als man dem bilîchen tuot,

as one to-him rightly does,

des muot niwan ze tugenden stât,

whose spirit only to virtues stands,

der alle untugende unmære hât.

who all vices indifferent has.

The Norwegian Merchants

XV

A Norwegian ship with falcons for sale puts in at Kanoel, and Rual goes aboard with Tristan and his own sons to buy the boys birds. Tristan asks the merchants in their own tongue whether they play chess, and one challenges him; Rual leaves him aboard with his tutor Kurvenal. The merchants, marveling at his languages and songs, resolve to steal him, and while he plays, they raise anchor. They set Kurvenal adrift in a small boat with an oar and bread.

In den zîten unde dô

In the times and then

2150 kam ez von âventiure alsô,

came it by adventure so,

daz von Norwæge über sê

that from Norway over sea

ein koufschif und dekeinez mê

a merchant-ship and none more

in daz lant ze Parmenîe kam

into the land to Parmenie came

und sîn gelende dâ genam

and its landing there took

2155 und ûz gestiez ze Kanoël

and out landed at Kanoel

vür daz selbe kastêl,

before the same castle,

da der marschalc ze stæte

where the marshal to constancy

sîn wesen ûffe hæte

his dwelling on had

und sîn junchêrre Tristan.

and his young-lord Tristan.

2160 nu daz die fremeden koufman

now that the foreign merchants

ir market heten ûz geleit,
their market had out laid,

vil schiere wart ze hove geseit,
very soon was at court told,

waz dâ koufrâtes wære.
what there of-wares were.

hier under kâmen mære
here under came tidings

Tristande ze unheile:
to-Tristan to misfortune:

2165

dâ wæren valken veile
there were falcons for-sale

und ander schœne vederspil.
and other fair hawks.

und wart des mæres alsô vil,
and was of-the tidings so much,

biz zwei des marschalkes kint
until two of-the marshal's children

(wan kint der dinge flîzec sint)
(for children of-the things eager are)

2170

under in zwein wurden inein,
among them two became agreed,

daz sî Tristanden zuo zin zwein,
that they Tristan to to-them two,

ir wânbruoder, nâmen
their supposed-brother, took

und an ir vater kâmen
and to their father came

und bâten den bihanden,
and asked him urgently,

2175

daz er in durch Tristanden
that he for-them for Tristan

der valken koufen hieze.
of-the falcons buy should-bid.

der edel Rûal lieze

the noble Rual would-let

und hæte ez nôte verlân,

and would-have it scarcely forgone,

2180 ez enmüese allez vür sich gân,

it must all before itself go,

des sîn friunt Tristan bæte,

what his friend Tristan should-ask,

wan er in werder hæte

for he him dearer had

und bôt ez baz im einem

and offered it better to-him alone

danne aller der dekeinem

than of-all of-them any

2185 von lande odr von gesinde.

of land or of household.

sîner eigenen kinde

of-his own children

was er sô flizec niht sô sîn.

was he so eager not as of-his.

dar an tete er der werlde schîn,

there on made he to-the world manifest,

wie vollekomenener triuwe er pflac,

how perfect faithfulness he kept,

2190 waz tugende und êren an im lac.

what virtue and honors in him lay.

er stuont ûf unde nam zehant

he stood up and took at-once

sînen sun Tristanden an die hant

his son Tristan by the hand

nâch vil vaterlichem site.

after very fatherly custom.

sîne ander süne giengen mite

his other sons went with

- und dâ zuo hovegesindes vil, 2195
and there to of-court-household much,
- die sô durch ernest sô durch spil
who as for earnest as for play
- in volgeten unz an den kiel;
him followed until to the keel;
- und swaz ieman dâ geviel,
and whatever anyone there pleased,
- dâ in sîn wille zuo getruoc,
where him his will to bore,
- des vant er umbe kouf genuoc, 2200
of-that found he for purchase enough,
- kleinœde, sîden, edele wât:
jewels, silks, noble clothes:
- des was dâ rât über rât.
of-that was there provision over provision.
- ouch was dâ schœne vederspil,
also was there fair hawks,
- valken pilgerîne vil,
falcons peregrine many,
- smirlîne und sperwære, 2205
merlins and sparrow-hawks,
- habeche, mûzære
goshawks, molted-hawks
- und ouch in rôten vederen:
and also in red feathers:
- von disen ietwederen
of these each-kind
- vant man vollen market dâ.
found one full market there.
- Tristande hiez man koufen sâ 2210
for-Tristan bade one buy at-once
- valken unde smirlîn.
falcons and merlins.

die sîne bruoder solten sîn,

who his brothers should be,

den wart ouch dâ gekouft durch in.

for-them was also there bought for him.

man gewan in allen drin

one got for-them all three

2215 swes iegelîcher gerte.

what each-one desired.

nu man si dô gewerte

now one them then granted

alles, des si wolten,

all, which they would,

und dannen kêren solten,

and thence turn should,

von âventiure ez dô geschach,

by adventure it then happened,

2220 daz Tristan in dem schiffe ersach

that Tristan in the ship saw

ein schâchzabel hangen,

a chessboard hang,

an brete und an den spangen

on board and on the clasps

vil schône und wol gezieret,

very beautifully and well adorned,

ze wunsche gefeitieret.

to wish fashioned.

2225 dâ bi hienc ein gesteine

there by hung a set-of-men

von edelem helfenbeine

of noble ivory

ergraben wol meisterliche.

carved very masterfully.

Tristan der tugentrîche

Tristan the virtue-rich

der sach ez flizeclîchen an.

he looked it diligently at.

»ei«, sprach er, »edelen koufman,

»ah«, spoke he, »noble merchants,

2230

sô helfe iu got! und kunnet ir

so help you God! and know you

schâchzabelspil? daz saget mir!«

chess-play? that tell me!«

und sprach daz in ir zungen.

and spoke that in their tongue.

nu sâhen sî den jungen

now looked they the young-one

aber noch flizeclîcher an,

again yet more-diligently at,

2235

dô er ir sprâche reden began,

when he their speech speak began,

die lützel ieman kunde dâ.

which little anyone knew there.

sus begundens an dem jungen sâ

thus began-they on the young-one at-once

merken elliu sîniu dinc.

notice all his things.

nu gedûhte si nie jungelinc

now seemed-to them never youth

2240

sô sæleclîche sîn getân

so blessedly be made

noch alsô schœne site hân.

nor so fair manners have.

»jâ«, sprach ir einer, »friunt, ir ist

»yes«, spoke of-them one, »friend, of-them is

under uns genuoc, die disen list

among us enough, who this art

wol kunnen; wellet irz besehen,

well know; (if)-want you-it try,

2245

sô mag ez harte wol geschehen:

so may it very well happen:

wol her, sô wil ich iuch bestân.«

come here, so will I you challenge.«

Tristan der sprach: »diz sî getân!«

Tristan he spoke: »this he done!«

sus sâzen sî zwêne über daz spil.

thus sat they two over the game.

2250 der marschalch sprach: »Tristan, ich wil

the marshal spoke: »Tristan, I will

wider ûf ze herbergen gân;

back up to lodging go;

wiltû, du maht wol hie bestân.

(if)-wilt-thou, thou canst well here stay.

mîn ander süne die gên mit mir;

my other sons they go with me;

sô sî dîn meister hie bî dir,

so be thy master here by thee,

2255 der neme dîn war und hüete dîn.«

he take of-thee heed and guard thee.«

sus gie der marschalch wider in

thus went the marshal back in

und sîn liut al gemeine,

and his people all together,

niwan Tristan al eine

except Tristan all alone

und sîn meister, der sîn pflac,

and his master, who of-him took-care,

2260 von dem ich iu wol sagen mac

of whom I to-you well say may

vür wâr, als uns diz mære seit,

for true, as to-us this tale says,

daz knappe nie von hövescheit

that squire never with courtliness

und von edeles herzen art

and with noble heart's nature

baz noch schöner geedelt wart,

better nor more-fairly ennobled was,

und was der Kurvenal genant.

and was he Kurvenal named.

2265

er hete manege tugende erkant,

he had many virtues known,

als er dem wol ze lère zam,

as he to-him well for teaching suited,

der ouch von sîner lère nam

who also from his teaching took

vil manegiu tugentlîchiu dinc.

very many virtuous things.

der tugentrîche jungelinc,

the virtue-rich youth,

2270

der wol gezogene Tristan,

the well bred Tristan,

saz unde spilte vür sich an

sat and played for himself on

sô schône und sô höfslîche,

so beautifully and so courtly,

daz in gemeinlîche

that him commonly

die fremeden aber an sâhen

the foreigners again at looked

2275

und in ir herzen jâhen,

and in their hearts said,

sine gesâhen nie dekeine jugent

they should-have-seen never any youth

gezieret mit sô maneger tugent.

adorned with so many-a virtue.

swaz fuoge er aber an der stete

whatever skill he however at the place

- 2280 mit gebærden oder mit spil getete,
with gestures or with game did,
 daz was in dâ wider als ein wint.
that was to-them there against as a wind.
 si nam des wunder, daz ein kint
them took of-it wonder, that a child
 sô manege sprâche kunde:
so many languages knew:
 die fluzzen ime ze munde,
they flowed to-him to mouth,
 2285 daz sîz ê nie vernâmen,
that they-it before never heard,
 an swelhe stat sî kâmen.
at whatever place they came.
 der hōfsche hovebære
the courtly courtier
 lie sîniu hovemære
let his court-tales
 und fremediu zabelwortelîn
and foreign chess-terms
 2290 underwîlen fliegen în:
at-times fly in:
 diu sprach er wol und kunde ir vil,
them spoke he well and knew of-them much,
 dâ mite sô zierter in sîn spil.
there with so adorned-he in his game.
 ouch sang er wol ze prîse
also sang he well to prize
 schanzûne und spæhe wîse,
songs and exquisite airs,
 2295 refloit und stampenîe.
refrains and estampies.
 al solher curtosîe
all such courtesy

treip er vil und sô vil an,
drove he much and so much on,

biz aber die werbenden man
until again the trading men

ze râte wurden under in:
to counsel became among them:

kundens in iemer bringen hin
could-they him ever bring away

2300

mit dekeiner slahte sinnen,
with any kind of-devices,

si möhten sîn gewinnen
they might of-him gain

grôzen frumen und êre.
great profit and honor.

und biten ouch dô niht mêre,
and waited also then not more,

si gebuten ir ruoderæren,
they commanded their rowers,

2305

daz sî bereite wæren,
that they ready were,

und zugen si selbe ir anker in,
and drew they self their anchor in,

als ez der rede niht solte sîn.
as-if it of-the matter not should be.

si stiezen an und fuoren dan
they pushed off and went away

sô lîse, daz es Tristan
so softly, that of-it Tristan

2310

noch Kurvenal nie wart gewar,
nor Kurvenal ever became aware,

unz sî si heten von dem var
until they them had from the harbor

wol eine grôze mîle brâht.
well a great mile brought.

wan jene die wâren verdâht

for those they were absorbed

2315 an ir spil sô sêre,

in their game so sorely,

daz sî dô nihtes mêre

that they then of-nothing more

niwan ir spiles gedâhten.

except of-their game thought.

nu sîz dô vollebrâhten,

now they-it then completed,

sô daz Tristan daz spil gewan,

so that Tristan the game won,

2320 und er sich umbe sehen began,

and he himself around look began,

dô sach er wol, wiez was gevarn.

then saw he well, how-it was gone.

nu gesâhet ir nie muoterbarn

now saw you never mother's-child

sô rehte leidegen als in:

so rightly sorrowful as him:

ûf sprang er und stuont under in.

up sprang he and stood among them.

2325 »ach«, sprach er, »edelen koufman,

»ab«, spoke he, »noble merchants,

durch got, waz gât ir mit mir an?

for God, what go you with me at?

saget, wâ wellet ir mich hin?«

say, where want you me off?«

»seht, friunt«, sprach einer under in,

»see, friend«, spoke one among them,

»diz enmac nu nieman bewarn,

»this can now no-one prevent,

2330 ir müezet hinnen mit uns varn.

you must hence with us fare.

gehabet iuch wol und sît frô.« –
bear yourself well and be glad.

Tristan der arme der huop dô
Tristan the poor-one he raised then

sô jâmerlichez klagen an,
so pitiful lamenting on,

daz Kurvenal, sîn friunt, began
that Kurvenal, his friend, began

mit ime von herzen weinen
with him from heart weep 2335

und solhe klage erscheinen,
and such lament show,

daz al daz kielgesinde
that all the ship-household

von ime und von dem kinde
from him and from the child

unmuotic wart und sêre unfrô.
dispirited became and sorely unglad.

Kurvenâlen sazten si dô
Kurvenal set they then 2340

in ein vil kleine schiffelîn
into a very little little-ship

und leiten zuo zim dar in
and laid to him there in

ein ruoder und ein kleine brôt
an oar and a little bread

ze der verte und ze der hungers nôt
for the journey and for the hunger's distress

und sprâchen, daz er kêrte,
and spoke, that he should-turn, 2345

swar in sîn muot gelêrte,
wherever him his spirit directed,

Tristan der müese hin mit in.
Tristan he must away with them.

mit der rede fuoren si hin

with the speech went they away

und liezen in dâ swebenden,

and left him there floating,

2350 in manegen sorgen lebenden.

in many cares living.

The Storm

XVI

Kurvenal rows home in terror and tells what has happened, and Rual, Floraete, and all the household weep on the shore, crying out a farewell to their lost Tristan. God sends a storm that tosses the ship for eight days and nights, until the Norwegians decide it is punishment for the robbery and vow to set the boy free. At once the storm subsides, and the wind brings them to Cornwall, where they put Tristan ashore with bread and sail away.

Kurvenal swebete ûf dem sê;

Kurvenal floated on the sea;

in manege wîs sô was im wê:

in many ways so was to-him woe:

wê umbe daz michel ungemach,

woe for the great discomfort,

daz er an Tristande sach;

which he in Tristan saw;

2355 wê umbe sîn selbes nô,

woe for his own distress,

durch daz er vorhte den tô,

because that he feared the death,

wan er niht varen kunde

for he not sail could

noch es nie dâ vor begunde.

nor it ever there before began.

und klagende sprach er wider sich:

and lamenting spoke he toward himself:

»got hêrre, wie gewirbe ich!

»God lord, how fare I!

2360

ine wart alsus besorget nie.

I was thus troubled never.

nu bin ich âne liute hie

now am I without people here

und enkan ouch selbe niht gevarn.

and can also self not sail.

got hêrre, dû solt mich bewarn

God lord, thou shalt me guard

und mîn geverte hinnen sîn.

and my companion hence be.

2365

ich wil ûf die genâde dîn,

I will upon the grace thine,

des ich nie began, beginnen:

what I never began, begin:

wis mîn geleite hinnen!«

be my escort hence!«

hie mite greif er sîn ruoder an,

here with seized he his oar on,

in gotes namen fuor er dan

in God's name went he away

2370

und kam in kurzer stunde,

and came in short hour,

als es im got gegunde,

as it to-him God granted,

wider heim und seite mære,

back home and told tidings,

wie ez gevaren wære.

how it fared were.

der marschalc und sîn sælic wîp,

the marshal and his blessed wife,

2375

diu beide leiten an ir lîp
they both laid on their body

sô jæmerliche klagenôt,
so pitiful lament-distress,

und wærer vor ir ougen tôt,
and were-he before their eyes dead,

daz in diu selbe swære
that to-them the same grief

2380 niht nâher gangen wære.
not nearer gone would-have.

sus giengen sî dô beide
thus went they then both

in ir gemeinem leide
in their common sorrow

und al ir ingesinde
and all their household

nâch ir verlornem kinde
after their lost child

2385 weinen ûf des meres stat.
weep on the sea's shore.

manec zunge dâ mit triuwen bat,
many-a tongue there with faithfulness prayed,

daz got sîn helfe wære.
that God his help were.

dâ wart manc klagemære:
there was many-a lament:

ir klage was sus, ir klage was sô;
their lament was thus, their lament was so;

2390 und also ez an den âbent dô
and as it toward the evening then

und an ein scheiden muose gân,
and toward a parting must go,

ir klage, diu ê was undertân,
their lament, which before was divided,

diu wart dô gâr einbære:

it became then wholly united:

si triben niwan ein mære,

they drove only one tale,

si riefen hie, si riefen dort

they cried here, they cried there

2395

niht anders wan daz eine wort:

nothing else than the one word:

»bêas Tristan, cûrtois Tristan,

»fair Tristan, courtly Tristan,

tun cors, ta vie a dê comant!

thy body, thy life to God commend!

dîn schœner lîp, dîn sœze leben

thy fair body, thy sweet life

daz sî hiute gote ergeben!«

that be today to-God given!«

2400

In disen dingen fuorten in

In these things led him

die Norwægen allez hin

the Norwegians all away

und heten ez alsô bedâht,

and had it so considered,

si hæten an im vollebrâht

they had on him accomplished

ir willen allen unde ir ger.

their will all and their desire.

2405

dô widerschuof ez allez der,

then undid it all he,

der elliu dinc beslihtet,

who all things smooths,

beslihtende berihtet,

smoothing sets-right,

dem winde, mer und elliu kraft

whom wind, sea and all power

2410 bibende sint dienesthaft.

trembling are serviceable.

als der wolte und der gebôt,

as he would and he commanded,

dô huop sich ein sô michel nôt

then raised itself a so great distress

von sturmwetere ûf dem sê,

from storm-weather on the sea,

daz si alle samet in selben mê

that they all together themselves self more

2415 enmohten niht ze staten gestân,

could not to aid stand,

wan daz si et ir schif liezen gân,

but that they just their ship let go,

dar ez die wilden winde triben

whither it the wild winds drove

und si selbe âne trôst beliben

and they self without comfort remained

umbe ir lîp und umbe ir leben.

for their body and for their life.

2420 si heten sich mitalle ergeben

they had themselves altogether surrendered

an die vil armen stiure,

to the very poor steering,

diu da heizet âventiure:

which there is-called adventure:

si liezen ez an die geschiht,

they left it to the chance,

weder si genæren oder niht,

whether they should-survive or not,

wan ir dinges was nimê 2425
for of-their matter was no-more

wan daz si mit dem wilden sê
than that they with the wild sea

ûf als in den himel stigen
up as into the heaven climbed

und iesâ wider nider sigen
and at-once back down sank

als in daz apgründe.
as into the abyss.

si triben die tobenden unde 2430
them drove the raging waves

wîlent ûf und wîlent nider,
at-times up and at-times down,

iezuo dar und iesâ wider.
now thither and at-once back.

ir aller keiner kunde
of-them all none could

noch enmohte keine stunde
nor could any hour

ûf sînen fûezen gestân. 2435
on his feet stand.

alsus sô was ir leben getân
thus so was their life made

wol ahte tage und ahte naht.
well eight days and eight nights.

hie von so hetens alle ir maht
here from so had-they all their strength

vil nâch verloren unde ir sin
very nearly lost and their mind

nu sprach ir einer under in: 2440
now spoke of-them one among them:

»ir hêrren alle, semir got,
»you lords all, so-help-me God,

mich dunket, diz sî gotes gebot
me seems, this be God's command

umbe unser angestlîchez leben;
for our fearful life;

daz wir sô kûme lebende sweben
that we so barely living hover

2445 in disen tobenden ûnden,
in these raging waves,

deist niwan von den sünden
that-is only from the sins

und von den untriuwen komen,
and from the faithlessness come,

daz wir Tristanden hân genomen
that we Tristan have taken

sînen friunden rouplîche.«
from-his friends robber-like.»

2450 »jâ«, sprâchens al gelîche:
»yes«, spoke-they all alike:

»sich, dû hâst wâr, ez ist alsô.«
»look, thou hast truth, it is so.«

hie mite berieten sî sich dô:
here with counseled they themselves then:

möhten si stille vinden
could they stillness find

an wazzer und an winden,
on water and on winds,

2455 daz sî ze stade gestiezen,
that they to shore should-land,

daz si in vil gerne liezen
that they him very gladly should-let

frîlîche, swar er wolte, gân.
freely, wherever he would, go.

und iesâ dô diz was getân,
and at-once when this was done,

daz diz ir aller wille wart,
that this their of-all will became,

dô wart ir kumberlîchiu vart
then was their toilsome journey

2460

gesenftet an der stunde:
softened at the hour:

wint unde wâc begunde
wind and wave began

sich sâ zerlœsen und zerlân,
themselves at-once loosen and relax,

daz mer begunde nider gân,
the sea began down go,

diu sunne schînen licht als ê.
the sun shine bright as before.

2465

hie mite enbitens ouch dô nimê,
here with waited-they also then no-more,

wan der wint hete sî geslagen
for the wind had them driven

innerhalp den ahte tagen
within the eight days

in daz lant ze Kurnewâle
into the land of Cornwall

und wâren zuo dem mâle
and were at the time

2470

bî dem stade sô nâhen,
by the shore so near,

daz sîn bereite sâhen
that they-it readily saw

und stiezen ûz ze lande aldâ.
and landed out to land there.

Tristanden nâmen si sâ

Tristan took they at-once

2475 und sazten den ûz an daz lant

and set him out on the land

und gâben ime brôt an die hant

and gave him bread in the hand

und ander ir spîse ein teil.

and other their food a part.

»friunt«, sprâchen sî, »got gebe dir heil

»friend«, spoke they, »God give thee fortune

und müeze dînes lîbes pflegen!«

and may of-thy body take-care!«

2480 hie mite sô butens im alle ir segên.

here with so offered-they him all their blessing.

und kêrten iesâ wider dan.

and turned at-once back away.

Alone in Cornwall

XVII

Left weeping on the shore, Tristan prays that God will lead him among people, fearing the wilderness, the wolves, and the coming night. He tucks up his rich green robe, lined with ermine, and climbs through rock and forest to a height, where he finds a path down to a broad road. There he sits and weeps again, lamenting his father and mother, who must think him lost, and cursing the chess game and the hawks that robbed him of his home.

Nu wie gewarp dô Tristan?

Now how fared then Tristan?

Tristan der ellende? jâ.

Tristan the exile? yes.

dâ saz er unde weinde aldâ;

there sat he and wept there;

wan kint enkunnen anders niht

for children can else nothing

2485

wan weinen, alse in iht geschiht.

than weep, when to-them anything happens.

der trôstelôse ellende

the comfortless exile

der vielt ûf sîne hende

he folded up his hands

ze gote vil inneclîche;

to God very inwardly;

»ei«, sprach er, »got der rîche,

»ah«, spoke he, »God the rich,

2490

sô rîche dû genâden bist,

as rich thou of-graces art,

sô vil güete als an dir ist,

as much goodness as in thee is,

vil süezer got, sô bite ich dich,

very sweet God, so pray I thee,

daz dû genâde wider mich

that thou grace toward me

und dîne güete noch begât,

and thy goodness yet shew,

2495

sît daz du des verhenget hât,

since that thou it permitted hast,

daz ich alsus verfüeret bin,

that I thus abducted am,

und wîse mich doch noch dâ hin,

and guide me yet still there to,

dâ ich bî liuten müge gesîn.

where I among people may be.

nu warte ich allenthalben mîn

now look I on-all-sides for-me

2500

und sihe niht lebendes umbe mich.

and see nothing living around me.

dise grôze wilde die fürhte ich:

this great wilderness it fear I:

swar ich mîn ougen wende,

wherever I my eyes turn,

da ist mir der werlde ein ende;

there is to-me of-the world an end;

2505 swâ ich mich hin gekêre,

wherever I myself thither turn,

dane sihe ich ie nimêre

there see I ever no-more

niwan ein toup gevilde

except a barren field

und wüeste unde wilde,

and waste and wild,

wilde velse und wilden sê.

wild rocks and wild sea.

2510 disiu vorhte tuot mir wê;

this fear does to-me woe;

über daz allez sô fürhte ich,

over that all so fear I,

wolve unde tier diu frezen mich,

wolves and beasts they devour me,

swelhen ende ich kêre.

whichever end I turn.

ouch sîget der tac sêre

also sinks the day sorely

2515 gegen der âbentzîte.

toward the evening-time.

swaz ich nu mê gebîte,

whatever I now more wait,

daz ich von hinnen niht engân,

that I from hence not go,

daz ist vil übele getân;

that is very ill done;

ich enîle hinnen balde,

I unless-hurry hence quickly,

ich benahte in disem walde

I benight in this forest

2520

und enwirt mîn danne niemer rât.

and becomes of-me then never remedy.

nu sihe ich, daz hie bî mir stât

now see I, that here by me stands

hóher velse und berge vil:

high rocks and mountains many:

ich wæne, ich ûf ir einen wil

I think, I onto of-them one will

klimmen, ob ich iemer mac,

climb, if I ever may,

2525

und sehen, die wîle ich hân den tac,

and see, the while I have the day,

ob keiner slahte bû hie sî

whether any kind dwelling here be

eintweder verre odr nâhen bî,

either far or near by,

dâ ich liute vinde,

where I people find,

ze den ich mich gesinde,

to whom I myself join,

2530

mit den ich aber vûrbaz genese,

with whom I again further survive,

in swelher wîse ez danne wese.«

in whatever way it then be.«

Sus stuont er ûf und kêrte dan.

Thus stood he up and turned away.

roc unde mantel hete er an

coat and mantle had he on

2535 von einem phelle, der was rîch

of a brocade, which was rich

und an gewürhte wunderlîch:

and in workmanship wondrous:

er was von Sarrazînen

it was by Saracens

mit kleinen bortelînen

with fine little-borders

in fremdeclîchem prîse

in strange prize

2540 nâch heidenischer wîse

after heathen manner

wol underworht und underbritten,

well worked-in and interwoven,

und was der alsô wol gesniten

and was it so well cut

nâch sînem schœnem lîbe,

after his fair body,

daz von manne noch von wîbe

that by man nor by woman

2545 enwurden edeler kleider nie

were nobler clothes never

baz gesniten danne die.

better cut than those.

dar zuo seit uns daz mære,

there to tells to-us the tale,

der selbe phelle er wære

the same brocade it were

ingrüener danne ein meiesch gras,

greener than a May's grass,

- und dâ mit er gefüllet was, 2550
and there with it lined was,
- daz was sô rehte wîz hermîn,
that was so right white ermine,
- daz ez niht wîzer kunde sîn.
that it not whiter could be.
- hie mite bereite er sich dô
here with prepared he himself then
- weinende unde sêre unfrô
weeping and sorely unglad
- ûf sîne kumberliche vart, 2555
for his toilsome journey,
- dô ime diu vart unwendic wart.
when to-him the journey unavoidable became.
- under sînen gürtel zôher
under his belt drew-he
- sînen roc ein lützel hôher,
his coat a little higher,
- den mantel wand er inein
the mantle wound he together
- und leite in ûf sîn ahselbein 2560
and laid it on his shoulder-bone
- und streich ûf gegen der wilde
and struck up toward the wilderness
- durch walt und durch gevilde.
through forest and through field.
- ern hete weder wec noch phat
he had neither way nor path
- wan also er selbe getrat.
except as he self trod.
- mit sînen fûezen wegeter, 2565
with his feet made-way-he,
- mit sînen handen stegeter:
with his hands made-path-he:

er reit sîn arme und sîniu bein.

he rode his arms and his legs.

über stoc und über stein

over stump and over stone

wider berc er allez klam,

up mountain he all climbed,

2570 unz er ûf eine hœhe kam.

until he on a height came.

dâ vand er von geschichte

there found he by chance

einen waltstîc âne slihte

a forest-path without smoothing

mit grase verwahsen unde smal.

with grass overgrown and narrow.

den kêrte er anderhalp ze tal.

it turned he on-the-other-side to valley.

2575 er truog in eine rihte hin,

it bore him a straight-way along,

in kurzer wîle brâhte er in

in short while brought it him

ûf eine schœne strâze,

onto a fair road,

diu was ze guoter mâze

which was to good measure

breit unde geriten hin und her.

broad and ridden hitber and thither.

2580 an dem selben wege saz er

on the same way sat he

durch ruowe weinende nider.

for rest weeping down.

nu truog in ie sîn herze wider

now bore him ever his heart back

ze den friunden und zem lande,

to the friends and to-the land,

dâ er die liute erkande:

where he the people knew:

diz truog in grôzen jâmer an.

this bore him great misery on.

2585

vil jâmerlîche er aber began

very pitifully he again began

ze gote klagen sîn ungemach;

to God lament his discomfort;

ze himele er inneclîche sach:

to heaven he inwardly looked:

»got,« sprach er, »hêrre guoter,

»God,« spoke he, »lord good,

mîn vater und mîn muoter

my father and my mother

2590

wie hânt si mich alsus verlorn!

how have they me thus lost!

owê, wol hæte ich verborn

alas, well would-have I forgone

mîn veigez schâchzabelspil,

my fated chess-play,

daz ich iemer hazzen wil.

which I ever hate will.

sperwære, valken, smirlîn,

sparrow-hawks, falcons, merlins,

2595

die lâze got unsælic sîn!

them let God unblessed be!

die hânt mich mînem vater benomen.

they have me from-my father taken.

von der schulden bin ich komen

from that cause am I come

von friunden und von kunden;

from friends and from kin;

- 2600 und alle, die mir gunden
and all, who to-me granted
 gelükes unde guotes,
of-luck and of-good,
 die sint nu swæres muotes
they are now of-heavy spirit
 und sêre trûric umbe mich.
and sorely sad about me.
 ach, süeziu muoter, wie du dich
ah, sweet mother, how thou thyself
- 2605 mit klage nu quelest, daz weiz ich wol;
with lament now tormentest, that know I well;
 vater, dîn herze ist leides vol:
father, thy heart is of-sorrow full:
 ich weiz wol, ir sît beide
I know well, you are both
 sêre überladen mit leide.
sorely overladen with sorrow.
 und owê, hêre, wiste ich doch,
and alas, lord, knew I yet,
- 2610 daz ir daz wistet, daz ich noch
that you that knew, that I still
 mit wol gesundem lîbe lebe,
with well healthy body live,
 daz wære ein michel gotes gebe
that would-be a great God's gift
 iu beiden unde dâ nâch mir.
to-you both and there after to-me.
 wan zwâre ich weiz vil wol, daz ir
for truly I know very well, that you
- 2615 kûme oder niemer werdet frô,
barely or never become glad,
 ezn gefüege danne got alsô,
unless-it arrange then God so,

daz ir bevindet, daz ich lebe.

that you find-out, that I live.

aller sorgære râtgebe,

of-all sorrowers counsel-giver,

got hêrre, nû gefüege daz!«

God lord, now arrange that!«

The Pilgrims

XVIII

Two old pilgrims come along the road in linen hoods, with shells, staffs, and palms. Tristan, reassured, answers their French greeting in French and tells them a false tale: he is from this land and lost his way while hunting. They are bound for Tintajoel and let him walk with them. Along the way they marvel at his speech, his manners, and his rich clothes, and wonder who and whence the child can be, and so they walk on for a Welsh mile.

Under diu, dô er sô saz

Under that, when he so sat

klagende als ich gesaget hân,

lamenting as I told have,

do gesach er zuo von verre gân

then saw he toward from afar go

zwêne alte wallære,

two old pilgrims,

die wâren gote gebære:

who were to-God suitable:

getaget unde gejâret,

full-of-days and full-of-years,

gebartet unde gehâret,

bearded and haired,

2620

2625

alsô diu wâren gotes kint
as the true God's children

und wallære dicke sint.
and pilgrims often are.

die selben wallenden man
the same pilgrim men

2630 die truogen unde heten an
they bore and had on

lînkappen unde solhe wât,
linen-hoods and such clothing,

diu wallæren rehte stât,
which to-pilgrims rightly befits,

und ûzen an ir wæte
and outside on their clothing

mermuschelen genæte
sea-shells sewn

2635 und fremeder zeichen genuoc.
and of-foreign tokens enough.

ir ietwederre der truoc
of-them each he bore

einen wallestap an sîner hant.
a pilgrim's-staff in his hand.

ir hüete und ir beingewant
their hats and their leg-clothing

daz stuont wol nâch ir rehte.
that stood well after their right.

2640 die selben gotes knehte
the same God's servants

die truogen an ir schenkelen
they wore on their shanks

lînhosen, die obe ir enkelen
linen-hose, which above their ankles

wol einer hende erwunden,
well a hand's-breadth ended,

nâhe an ir bein gebunden.

close to their legs bound.

füeze und enkele wâren blôz

feet and ankles were bare

2645

vür den trit und vür den stôz.

for the tread and for the stumble.

ouch truogens über ir ruckebein,

also bore-they over their back-bone,

dar an ir riuwic leben schein,

there on their penitent life shone,

geistliche stânde palmen.

spiritual standing palms.

ir gebet unde ir salmen

their prayer and their psalms

2650

und swaz si guotes kunden,

and whatever they of-good knew,

daz lâren si an den stunden.

that recited they at the hours.

Tristan dâ mite und er si ersach,

Tristan there with and he them saw,

vorhtliche er wider sich selben sprach:

fearfully he to himself self spoke:

»genædeclîcher trehtîn,

»gracious Lord,

2655

welch rât gewirdet aber nu mîn?

what counsel becomes again now of-me?

jene zwêne man, die dort her gânt,

those two men, who there hither go,

ist daz si mich ersehen hânt,

(if)-is that they me espied have,

die mugen mich aber wol vâhen.«

they may me again well catch.»

- 2660 nu si ime begunden nâhen
now they him began approach
 und er ir dinc erkande
and he their matter recognized
 an staben und an gewande,
by staffs and by clothing,
 zehant erkande er wol ir leben
at-once recognized he well their life
 und begunde im selben herze geben,
and began to-him self heart give,
- 2665 sîn gemüete wart ein lützel frô.
his spirit became a little glad.
 ûz vollem herzen sprach er dô:
from full heart spoke he then:
 »lop dich, hêrre trehtîn!
»praise thee, lord Lord!
 diz mugen wol guote liute sîn,
these may well good people be,
 ine darf kein angest von in haben.«
I need no fear of them have.«
- 2670 vil schiere wart, daz sî den knaben
very soon happened, that they the boy
 vor in sitzen sâhen.
before them sitting saw.
 nu si ime begunden nâhen,
now they him began approach,
 höfischliche er ûf gein in spranc,
courteously he up toward them sprang,
 sîne schoene hende er vür sich twanc.
his fair hands he before himself clasped.

nu begunden in die zwêne man 2675
now began him the two men

vil flizeclîche sehen an
very diligently look at

und nâmen sîner zûhte war.
and took of-his breeding heed.

guotlîche giengen si dar
kindly went they thither

und gruozten in vil suoze
and greeted him very sweetly

mit disem süezen gruoze: 2680
with this sweet greeting:

»dê us sal, bêas âmîs!
»God you save, fair friend!

vil lieber friunt, swer sô du sîs,
very dear friend, whoever so thou be,

got müeze dich gehalten!«
God may thee preserve!«

Tristan geneic den alten:
Tristan bowed to-the old-ones:

»ei«, sprach er, »dê benîe 2685
»ab«, spoke he, »God bless

si sainte companîe!
so holy company!

sus heilige geselleschaft
such holy company

die gesegene got mit sîner kraft!«
it bless God with his might!«

aber sprâchen ime die zwêne zuo:
again spoke to-him the two to:

»vil liebez kint, wannen bistuo 2690
»very dear child, whence art-thou

oder wer hât dich dâ her brâht?«
or who has thee there hither brought?«

Tristan der was vil wol bedâht

Tristan he was very well considered

und sinnesam von sînen tagen,

and sensible for his days,

er begunde in fremediu mære sagen:

he began to-them strange tales tell:

2695 »sæligen hêrren«, sprach er zin,

»blessed lords«, spoke he to-them,

»von disem lande ich bûrtic bin

»of this land I native am

und solte rîten hiute

and should ride today

ich und ander liute

I and other people

jagen ûf disem walde al hie.

hunt in this forest all here.

2700 do entreit ich, ine weiz selbe wie,

then rode-away I, I-not know self how,

den jegern und den hunden.

from-the hunters and from-the bounds.

die die waltstîge kunden,

who the forest-paths knew,

die gefuoren alle baz dan ich:

they fared all better than I:

wan âne stîc verreit ich mich,

for without path rode-astray I myself,

2705 unz daz ich gâr verirret wart.

until that I wholly lost was.

sus traf ich eine veige vart,

thus struck I a fated way,

diu truoc mich unz ûf einen graben,

which bore me until onto a ditch,

dane kunde ich mîn phert nie gehaben,

there could I my horse never hold,

ez enwolte allez nider vür sich.

it unless-wanted all down before itself.

ze jungest gelac pfert und ich

at last lay horse and I

2710

beide zeinem hûfen nider.

both in-a heap down.

do enkunde ich nie so schiere wider

then could I never so quickly back

ze mînem stegereife komen,

to my stirrup come,

ez enhæte mir den zûgel genomen

it unless-had from-me the rein taken

und lief allez den walt in.

and ran all the forest in.

2715

sus kam ich an diz phedelîn,

thus came I onto this little-path,

daz hât mich unz her getragen.

which has me until here carried.

nu enkan ich nieman gesagen,

now can I no-one tell,

wâ ich bin oder war ich sol.

where I am or whither I shall.

nu, guoten liute, tuot sô wol

now, good people, do so well

2720

und saget mir, wâ welt ir hin?«

and tell me, where want you to?«

»friunt«, sprâchen sî dô wider in,

»friend«, spoke they then back to-him,

»geruochet unser trehtîn,

»(if)-deigns our Lord,

sô welle wir noch hînaht sîn

so want we yet tonight be

ze Tintajoêle in der stat.«

at Tintajoel in the town.«

2725

Tristan guotlîche sî dô bat,

Tristan kindly them then asked,

daz si in mit in dar liezen gân.

that they him with them there let go.

»vil liebez kint, daz sî getân,«

»very dear child, that be done,«

sprâchen die wallenden man;

spoke the pilgrim men;

2730 »wiltû dâ hin, sô kêre dan.«

»wilt-thou there to, so turn away.«

Tristan der kêrte mit in hin.

Tristan he turned with them thither.

hie mite sô huop sich under in

here with so raised itself between them

maneger slahte mære.

of-many kind talk.

Tristan der hovebære

Tristan the courtly

2735 der was mit rede alsô gewar,

he was with speech so heedful,

si frâgeten her oder dar,

they asked hither or thither,

daz er des alles antwürte bôt

that he of-it all answer offered

niwan ze staten und ze nôt.

only to purpose and to need.

er hete sîne mâze

he had his measure

2740 an rede und an gelâze

in speech and in bearing

sô wol, daz es die wîsen,

so well, that it the wise,

die getageten und die grîsen,

the aged and the gray,

ze grôzen sælden jâhen

to great fortune declared

und aber ie baz besâhen

and again ever better regarded

sîne gebærde und sîne site

his bearing and his manners

2745

und sînen schoenen lîp dâ mite;

and his fair body there with;

sîniu kleider, diu er an truoc,

his clothes, which he on wore,

diu gemarcten sî genuoc,

them marked they enough,

durch daz si wâren sêre rîch

because that they were sorely rich

und an gewürhte wunderlîch,

and in workmanship wondrous,

2750

und sprâchen in ir muote:

and spoke in their spirit:

»ach hêrre got der guote,

»ah lord God the good,

wer oder wannen ist diz kint,

who or whence is this child,

des site sô rehte schoene sint?»

whose manners so right fair are?»

sus giengens in betrachtende

thus went-they him considering

2755

und allez sîn dinc ahtende

and all his matter observing

(diz was ir kurzewîle)

(this was their pastime)

wol eine welsche mîle.

well a Welsh mile.

The Breaking of the Hart

XIX

King Mark's hounds bring a hart to bay beside the road, and Tristan leaves the pilgrims to join the huntsmen. When their master lays the hart out on all fours like a pig to quarter it, Tristan objects that his country breaks a hart. The master, who has never heard of breaking, begs him to show it. He lays aside his mantle and, step by step, skins the hart, detaches its limbs, and parts the breast, haunches, and ribs, while the hunters look on in wonder.

Nu kam ez in kurzer stunde,

Now came it in short hour,

2760 sînes œheimes hunde,

his uncle's hounds,

Markes von Kurnewâl,

Mark's of Cornwall,

die heten zuo dem mâle,

they had at the time,

als uns daz wære mære saget,

as to-us the true tale says,

einen zîtigen hirsch gejaget

a mature hart hunted

2765 zuo der strâze nâhen.

to the road near.

dâ liez er sich ergâhen

there let it itself overtake

und stuont aldâ ze bîle:

and stood there at bay:

im hete fluht und île

from-it had flight and haste

alle sîne kraft benomen.

all its strength taken.

2770 nu wâren ouch die jegere komen

now were also the hunters come

mit michelem geschelle

with great clamor

hürnende ze gevelle.

horn-blowing to fall.

Tristan dô er den bîl ersach,

Tristan when he the bay saw,

wider die pilgerîne er sprach

to the pilgrims he spoke

wîslîche als er wol kunde:

wisely as he well could:

»ir hêrren, dise hunde,

»you lords, these hounds,

disen hîrz und dise liute,

this hart and these people,

seht, die verlôs ich hiute;

see, them lost I today;

nu hân ichs aber vunden,

now have I-them again found,

diz sint mîne kunden.

these are my acquaintances.

gebietet mir, ze den wil ich.«

command me, to them will I.«

»kint«, sprâchen sî, »got segene dich;

»child«, spoke they, »God bless thee;

ze sælden müezest dû gevarn!«

to fortune mayst thou fare!«

»gnâde unde got müeze iuch bewarn!«

»thanks and God may you guard!«

sprach aber der guote Tristan.

spoke again the good Tristan.

sus neig er in und kêrte dan

thus bowed he to-them and turned away

gein dem hirze ûf sîne vart.

toward the hart on his way.

2775

2780

2785

nu daz der hîrz gevellet wart,
now that the hart felled was,

der da jegermeister was,
who there master-huntsman was,

2790 der stracte in nider ûf daz gras
he stretched it down on the grass

ûf alle viere alsam ein swîn.
on all fours like a swine.

»wie nû, meister, waz sol diz sîn?«
»how now, master, what shall this be?«

sprach aber der höfsche Tristan:
spoke again the courtly Tristan:

»lât stân! durch got, waz gât ir an?
»let be! for God, what go you at?

2795 wer gesach ie hîrz zewirken sô?«
who saw ever hart cut-up so?«

der jeger stuont ûf hôher dô,
the huntsman stood up higher then,

er sach in an und sprach im zuo:
he looked him at and spoke to-him to:

»wie wiltu, kint, daz ich im tuo?
»how wilt-thou, child, that I to-it do?

hie ze lande enist kein ander list,
here in land is no other art,

2800 wan als der hîrz enthiutet ist,
but when the hart flayed is,

sô spaltet man in über al
so splits one it over all

von dem houbete ze tal
from the head to valley

und dâ nâch danne in viere,
and there after then into four,

sô daz der vier quartiere
so that of-the four quarters

dekeinez iht vil græzer sî 2805
none any very greater be

danne daz ander dâ bî:
than the other there by:

diz ist in disem lande site.
this is in this land custom.

kint, kanstu ihtes iht dâ mite?«
child, canst-thou of-anything anything there with?«

»jâ, meister,« sprach er wider in:
»yes, master,« spoke he back to-him:

»daz lant, dâ ich gezogen bin, 2810
»the land, where I raised am,

dâ ist der site niht alsô.«
there is the custom not so.«

»wie danne?« sprach der meister dô.
»how then?« spoke the master then.

»man enbestet dâ den hîrz.«
»one breaks there the hart.«

»entriuwen, friunt, du enzeigest mirz,
»in-truth, friend, thou unless-show me-it,

sone weiz ich, waz enbesten ist. 2815
so-not know I, what breaking is.

ez enweiz nieman disen list
it knows no-one this art

in disem künîcriche hie;
in this kingdom here;

so engehôrte in ouch genennen nie
so heard-I it also named never

von kunden noch von gesten.
by acquaintances nor by guests.

trût kint, waz ist enbesten? 2820
dear child, what is breaking?

als guot du sîst, nu zeige mirz,
as good thou be, now show me-it,

gâ her, enbeste disen hîrz!«

go here, break this hart!«

Tristan sprach: »lieber meister mîn,

Tristan spoke: »dear master mine,

sol ez mit iuvern hulden sîn

(if)-shall it with your favor be

2825 und mag iu liep dar an geschehen,

and may to-you pleasure there in happen,

sô lâze ich iuch vil gerne sehen,

so let I you very gladly see,

als verre als ichs gemerket hân,

as far as I-it noticed have,

wie mîn lantsite ist getân,

how my land-custom is made,

als ir dâ frâget umbe den bast.«

as you there ask about the breaking«

2830 der meister sach den jungen gast

the master looked the young guest

vil guotlîche lachende an,

very kindly laughing at,

wan er was selbe ein hofscher man

for he was self a courtly man

und erkande al die fuoge wol,

and knew all the fitness well,

die guot man erkennen sol.

which good man know shall.

2835 »jâ«, sprach er, »lieber friunt, nu tuo!

»yes«, spoke he, »dear friend, now do!

wol her, bist dû ze kranc der zuo,

come here, (if)-art thou too weak there to,

trût geselle, liebez kint,

dear companion, dear child,

ich selbe und die hie mit mir sint,

I self and who here with me are,

wir helfen dirn mit henden

we help thee-it with hands

legen und umbe wenden,

lay and around turn,

2840

swie sô du vor gebiutest

however so thou before commandest

und mit dem vinger tiutest.«

and with the finger pointest.«

Tristan der ellende knabe

Tristan the exiled boy

sînen mantel zôch er abe

his mantle drew he off

und leite den ûf einen stoc;

and laid it on a stump;

2845

er zôch hôher sînen roc.

he drew higher his coat.

sîne ermel vielt er vorne wider;

his sleeves folded he in-front back;

sîn schoene hâr daz streich er nider,

his fair hair that stroked he down,

ûf sîn ôre leite er daz.

over his ear laid he that.

nu besâhen sî baz unde baz,

now looked they better and better,

2850

die dâ zem baste wâren,

who there at-the breaking were,

sîn gelâz und sîn gebâren:

his manner and his bearing:

daz nâmens alle in ir muot

that took-they all into their spirit

und dûhte sî daz alse guot,

and seemed to-them that so good,

daz sîz vil gerne sâhen

that they-it very gladly saw

2855

und in ir herzen jâhen,
and in their hearts said,

sîn dinc wære allez edelîch,
his matter were all noble,

sîniu kleider fremede unde rîch,
his clothes foreign and rich,

sîn lîp ze wunsche getân.
his body to wish made.

2860 si begunden alle zuo im gân
they began all to him go

und sîner dinge nemen war.
and of-his things take heed.

nu gie der ellende dar
now went the exile thither

der junge meister Tristan:
the young master Tristan:

er greif den hîrz mit handen an
he gripped the hart with hands on

2865 und wolte in ûf den rucke legen.
and would it onto the back lay.

done kunde er in nie dar gewegen,
then could he it never there shift,

wan er was ime ze swære.
for it was for-him too heavy.

dô bat der hovebære,
then bade the courtly-one,

daz sîn im rehte leiten
that they-it for-him rightly should-lay

2870 und ûf den bast bereiten.
and for the breaking prepare.

nu daz was schiere getân,
now that was soon done,

ze dem hirze gieng er obene stân.
at the hart went he above stand.

da begunde er in entwæten,

there began he it undress,

er sneit in unde entnæten;

he cut it and unsewed;

unde von dem mûle nider

and from the mouth down

2875

ze den buocbeinen kêrte er wider.

to the shoulder-bones turned he back.

diu entrante er beide nâch ir zît,

them detached he both after their time,

daz rehte vor, daz linke sît.

the right before, the left after.

diu zwei hufbein er dô nam

the two haunch-bones he then took

und beschelte diu alsam:

and peeled them likewise:

2880

do begunde er die hût scheiden

then began he the hide part

von den sîten beiden

from the sides both

dô von den heften über al,

then from the joints over all,

al von obene hin ze tal

all from above down to valley

und breite sîne hût dô nider.

and spread its hide then down.

2885

ze sînen bûegen kêrte er wider

to its shoulders turned he back

von der brust enbaste er die,

from the breast broke he them,

daz er die brust dô ganze lie.

that he the breast then whole left.

die bûege leite er dort hin dan.

the shoulders laid he there thither away.

- 2890 sîne brust er dô began
its breast he then began
 ûz dem ruke scheiden
from the back part
 und von den sîten beiden
and from the sides both
 ietwederhalp driu rippe dâ mite.
on-each-side three ribs there with.
 daz ist der rehte bastsite:
that is the right breaking-custom:
- 2895 diu lât er iemer dar an,
them leaves he ever there on,
 der die brust gelœsen kan.
who the breast loosen can.
 und al zehant sô kêrte er her,
and all at-once so turned he hither,
 vil kûndeclîche enbaste er
very skillfully broke he
 beidiu sîniu hufbein
both its haunch-bones
- 2900 besunder niht wan beide inein.
apart not except both together.
 ir reht er ouch den beiden liez:
their right he also to-the both left:
 den brâten, dâ der rucke stiez
the roast, where the back joined
 über lanken gein dem ende
over flanks toward the end
 wol anderhalber hende,
well one-and-a-half hands,
- 2905 daz die dâ zimbre nennent,
which they there cimier name,
 die den bastlist erkennenent.
who the breaking-art know.

die rieben er dô beide schiet,

the ribs he then both parted,

beide er si von dem ruke schriet,

both he them from the back cut,

dar nâch den panzen ûf den pas;

there after the paunch at the pas;

und wan daz ungebære was

and because that unseemly was

2910

sînen schœnen handen, dô sprach er:

to-his fair hands, then spoke he:

»wol balde zwêne knehte her!

»come quickly two servants here!

tuot diz dort hin danne baz

put this there thither away better

und bereitet uns daz!«

and prepare for-us that!«

sus was der hîrz enbestet

thus was the hart broken

2915

diu hût billiche entleitet;

the hide fittingly unburdened;

die brust, die bûege, sîten, bein,

the breast, the shoulders, sides, legs,

daz hete er allez über ein

that had he all over one

vil schône dort hin dan geleit:

very beautifully there thither away laid:

hie mite sô was der bast bereit.

here with so was the breaking ready.

2920

The Fourchie and the Curee

XX

Tristan cuts a forked stick and binds the liver and choice parts on it as the fourchie, then makes the curee, cutting the heart into quarters and spreading the bounds' portions on the hide. He explains that the curee is named for the cuir, the hide, and that the custom makes the hounds keen. The huntsmen admire him, and he tells them to bring the hart to court with its head carried in the hand. They give him a horse and ask him to ride with them.

Tristan der ellende gast

Tristan the exiled guest

»seht«, sprach er, »meister, deist der bast

»look«, spoke he, »master, that-is the breaking

und alse ist disiu kunst getân.

and so is this art made.

nu geruochet ir her nâher gân

now deign you hither nearer go

2925 ir und iuwer massenê

you and your household

und machet die furkîe.«

and make the fourchie.«

»furkîe, trût kint, waz ist daz?

»fourchie, dear child, what is that?

du nennest mir vor, ine weiz waz.

thou namest to-me before, I-not know what.

du hâst uns disen jagelist,

thou hast to-us this hunting-art,

2930 der fremede und guot ze lobene ist,

which foreign and good to praise is,

wol meisterlichen her getân:

very masterfully hitherto done:

nu lâz in ouch noch vür sich gân,

now let it also yet before itself go,

volfüere dîne meisterschaft!

accomplish thy mastery!

wir sîn dir iemer dienesthaft.«

we are to-thee ever serviceable.«

Tristan spranc enwec zehant,

Tristan sprang away at-once,

2935

eine zwisele hiu er an die hant,

a forked-stick bewed he into the hand,

daz die dâ furke nennent,

which they there fork name,

die die furkîe erkennenent.

who the fourchie know.

doch ist niht sunders an den zwein:

yet is nothing different in the two:

furke unde zwisele deist al ein.

fork and forked-stick that-is all one.

2940

sus kam er wider mit sînem stabe.

thus came he back with his staff.

die lebere sneit er sunder abe,

the liver cut he separately off,

netze unde lumbele schiet er dan,

caul and loin-meat parted he away,

die zimberen er abe gewan

the cimiers he off took

von dem lide, an dem si was.

from the member, on which it was.

2945

sus saz er nider ûf daz gras;

thus sat he down on the grass;

diu stucke nam er elliu driu,

the pieces took he all three,

an sîne furke bant er diu

onto his fork bound he them

mit sînem netze vaste;

with his caul fast;

- 2950 mit einem grünen baste
with a green bast
 verstrichte erz sus unde sô.
bound he-it thus and so.
 »nu seht, ir hêren«, sprach er dô,
»now look, you lords«, spoke he then,
 »diz heizent sî furkîe
»this call they fourchie
 in unser jagerîe;
in our hunting;
- 2955 und wande ez an der furken ist,
and because it on the fork is,
 durch daz sô heizet dirre list
for that so is-called this art
 furkîe, und fûeget ouch daz wol,
fourchie, and fits also that well,
 sît ez an der furken wesen sol.
since it on the fork be shall.
 diz neme ein knecht an sîne hant!
this take a servant into his hand!
- 2960 nu tâlanc weset ir gemant
now today be you reminded
 umbe iuwer curîe.«
about your curee.«
 »curîe? dê benîe!«
»curee? God bless!«
 sprâchen si alle, »waz ist daz?
spoke they all, »what is that?
 wir vernæmen sarrazînisch baz.
we would-understand Saracen better.
- 2965 waz ist curîe, lieber man?
what is curee, dear man?
 swîc unde sage uns niht hie van:
be-silent and tell us nothing here of:

swaz ez sî, daz lâ geschehen,
whatever it be, that let happen,

daz wirz mit ougen ane sehen.
that we-it with eyes on see.

diz tuo durch dîne hövescheit!«
this do for thy courtliness!«

nu Tristan der was aber bereit:
now Tristan he was again ready:

2970

den herzeric er dô gevienc
the heart-string he then seized

(ich meine, an dem daz herze hienc)
(I mean, on which the heart hung)

und enblôzte in aller sîner habe.
and stripped it of-all its possession.

daz herze sneit er halbez abe
the heart cut he half off

hin gein dem spitzen ende
thither toward the pointed end

2975

und nam ez in sîne hende;
and took it into his hands;

er begunde ez teilieren
he began it divide

in kriuzewîs zevieren
in cross-wise to-quarter

und warf daz ûf die hût nider.
and threw that onto the hide down.

ze sînem ricke kêrte er wider.
to its spine turned he back.

2980

milz unde lungen lôste er abe,
spleen and lungs loosened he off,

dô was si hin des rickes habe.
then was it gone of-the spine's possession.

nu daz lac ûf der hiute dâ,
now that lay on the hide there,

ric unde gorgen sneit er sâ
spine and gullet cut he at-once

2985 obene, dâ diu brust erwant.
above, where the breast ended.

daz houbet lôste er al zehant
the head loosened he all at-once

mit dem gehürne von dem kragen
with the antlers from the neck

und hiez daz zuo der brüste tragen.
and bade that to the breast carry.

»nu wol her balde«! sprach er zin,
»now come here quickly«! spoke he to-them,

2990 »nemet balde disen rucke hin!
»take quickly this back away!

kome ieman armer liute her,
(if)-come anyone of-poor people hither,

der es geruoche oder ger,
who of-it deign or desire,

dem teilet disen rucke mite,
to-him share this back with,

oder tuot der mite nâch iuwerm site:
or do there with after your custom:

2995 sô mache ich die curîe.«
so make I the curee.«

dar gie diu cumpanîe
thither went the company

und nam sîner künste war.
and took of-bis art heed.

Tristan hiez im bringen dar,
Tristan bade him bring thither,

daz er im ê bereiten bat.
what he him before prepare bade.

nu daz lac allez an der stat 3000
now that lay all at the place
 wol gemachet unde bereit,
well made and prepared,
 als er in hete vor geseit.
as he to-them had before said.
 nu wâren der quartiere
now were the quarters
 von dem herzen viere
of the heart four
 vier halben ûf die hût geleit, 3005
four ways on the hide laid,
 nâch jegelîcher gewoneheit,
after huntsmanly custom,
 und lâgen ûf der hiute alsô:
and lay on the hide so:
 milz unde lungen sneit er dô,
spleen and lungs cut he then,
 dar nâch den panzen unde den pas
there after the paunch and the pas
 und swaz der hunde spîse was 3010
and whatever the hounds' food was
 in alsô kleine stuckelîn,
into so little little-pieces,
 als ez ein fuoge mohte sîn,
as it a fitness could be,
 und spreite ez allez ûf die hût.
and spread it all on the hide.
 hie mite begunde er überlût
here with began he aloud
 den hunden ruofen: »zâ, zâ, zâ!« 3015
to-the hounds call: »za, za, za!«

vil schiere wârens alle dâ
very soon were-they all there

und stuonden obe ir spîse.
and stood over their food.

»seht,« sprach der wortwîse,
»look,« spoke the word-wise-one,

»diz heizent sî curîe
»this call they curee

3020 dâ heime in Parmenîe,
there at-home in Parmenie,

und wil iu sagen umbe waz.
and will to-you tell for what.

ez heizet curîe umbe daz,
it is-called curee for that,

durch daz ez ûf der cuire lît,
because that it on the cuir lies,

swaz man den hunden danne gît;
whatever one to-the bounds then gives;

3025 als hât diu jegerîe
so has the hunting

den selben namen curîe
the same name curee

von cuire funden unde genomen.
from cuir found and taken.

von cuire sô ist curîe komen;
from cuir so is curee come;

und zwâre ez wart den hunden
and truly it was for-the bounds

3030 ze guoten dingen funden
to good things found

und ist ein guot gewoneheit,
and is a good custom,

wan swaz man in dar ûf geleit,
for whatever one to-them there on lays,

daz ist in süeze durch daz bluot
that is to-them sweet through the blood

und machet ouch die hunde guot.
and makes also the bounds good.

nu sehet an disen bastsite,
now look at this breaking-custom,

3035

da enist kein ander spæhe mite:
there is no other skill with:

nemet war, wie er iu gevalle.«
take heed, how it you please.»

»â hêrre! sprâchens alle,
»ah lord! spoke-they all,

»waz seistu, sæligez kint?
»what sayest-thou, blessed child?

wir sehen wol, dise liste sint
we see well, these arts are

3040

bracken unde hunden
for-brachets and bounds

ze grôzen frumen funden.«
to great profit found.»

Aber sprach der guote Tristan:

Again spoke the good Tristan:

»nu nemet iuwer hût hin dan,
»now take your hide thither away,

wan ine kan hie mite niht baz.
for I can here with not better.

3045

und wizzet wærlîche daz,
and know truly that,

künde ich iu baz gedienet hân,
could I you better served have,

daz hæte ich gerne getân.
that would-have I gladly done.

- der man der houwe sîne wit
the man he bew his withy
- 3050 und widet ûf sunder iuriu lit;
and bind up separately your members;
- daz houbet fûeret an der hant
the head lead in the hand
- und bringet iuvern prîsant
and bring your present
- ze hove nâch hovelîchem site:
to court after courtly custom:
- dâ hovet ir iuch selben mite.
there court you yourselves self with.
- 3055 sô wizzet ir ouch selbe wol,
so know you also self well,
- wie man den hîrz prîsanten sol;
how one the hart present shall;
- prîsantet in ze rehte!«
present it to right!«
- den meister und die knehte
the master and the servants
- die nam aber dô wunder,
them took again then wonder,
- 3060 daz in daz kint besunder
that to-them the child apart
- und mit bescheidenheite
and with discernment
- so manc jagereht vûr leite
so many-a hunting-rite before laid
- und daz ez sô vil wiste
and that it so much knew
- von sus getânem liste.
of thus made art.
- 3065 »sich,« sprâchen sî, »sæligez kint:
»look,« spoke they, »blessed child:

diu wunderlîchen underbint,

the wondrous distinctions,

diu du uns vür zelst und hâst gezalt

which thou to-us before tellest and hast told

diu dunkent uns sô manicvalt,

they seem to-us so manifold,

wir ensehen si noch baz zende gân.

we-not see them yet better to-end go.

swaz dû biz dâ her hâst getân,

whatever thou until there hither hast done,

3070

daz ahte wir ze nihte.«

that esteem we to nothing.«

sus zugens ime enrihte

thus drew-they to-him straight

ein pherit dar und bâten in,

a palfrey thither and asked him,

daz er durch sîne tugent mit in

that he for his virtue with them

nâch sîner kunst ze hove rite

after his art to court should-ride

3075

und er si sînen lantsite

and he them his land-custom

unz an ein ende lieze sehen.

until to an end should-let see.

Tristan sprach: »daz mac wol geschehen.

Tristan spoke: »that may well happen.

nemet den hirz ûf und wol hin!«

take the hart up and well away!«

sus saz er ûf und reit mit in.

thus sat he up and rode with them.

3080

The Ride to Tintajoel

XXI

On the way the huntsmen ask about him, and Tristan invents a story: he is a merchant's son from Parmenie who ran away to see foreign lands. One of them says he would be better called Fair Youth. He breaks two leafy chaplets from a linden and gives one to the master. At the gate he arranges the procession in the order of the hart's parts and asks for a horn; he blows so richly and delightfully that the others join in, and the castle rings with it.

Nu si also mit einander riten,

Now they so with each-other rode,

nu heten jene vil kûme erbiten

now had those very barely awaited

der state und der stunde:

the occasion and the hour:

ir iegelîch begunde

of-them each-one began

3085 entwerfen sîniu mære,

sketch his tales,

von welhem lande er wære

from which land he were

und wie er dâ her wære komen.

and how he there hither were come.

si hæten gerne vernomen

they would-have gladly heard

sîn dinc und sîn ahte.

his matter and his condition.

3090 diz nam in sîne trahte

this took into his pondering

der sinnesame Tristan.

the sensible Tristan.

vil sinneclîche er aber began
very sensibly he again began

sîn âventiure vinden.
his adventure invent.

sîn rede diu enwas kînden
his speech it was to-children

niht gelîch noch sus noch sô.
not like neither thus nor so.

3095

vil sinneclîche sprach er dô:
very sensibly spoke he then:

»jensît Britanje lît ein lant,
»beyond Britain lies a land,

deist Parmenîe genant;
that-is Parmenie named;

dâ ist mîn vater ein koufman,
there is my father a merchant,

der wol nâch sîner ahte kan
who well after his condition can

3100

der werlde leben schône unde wol,
of-the world live beautifully and well,

ich meine aber, alse ein koufman sol.
I mean however, as a merchant shall.

und wizzet endelîche:
and know truly:

ern ist doch niht sô rîche
he is yet not so rich

der habe unde des guotes
of-the property and of-the goods

3105

sô tugentlîches muotes:
as of-virtuous spirit:

der hiez mich lêren, daz ich kan.
he bade me learn, what I know.

nû kâmen dicke koufman

now came often merchants

von fremeden künicrîchen dar;

from foreign kingdoms thither;

3110 der dinges nam ich sô vil war

of-their matter took I so much heed

beide an ir sprâche und an ir siten,

both in their speech and in their manners,

unz mich mîn muot begunde biten

until me my spirit began bid

und schünden stæteclîche

and urge constantly

in fremediu künicrîche,

into foreign kingdoms,

3115 und wande ich gerne hæte erkant

and because I gladly would-have known

unkunde liute und fremediu lant,

unknown people and foreign lands,

dô was ich spâte unde fruo

then was I late and early

also betrahtic dar zuo,

so intent there to,

unz daz ich mînem vater entran

until that I from-my father ran-away

3120 und fuor mit koufliuten dan:

and went with merchants away:

als bin ich her ze lande komen.

so am I hither to land come.

nu habet ir al mîn dinc vernomen;

now have you all my matter heard;

ine weiz, wie ez iu gevalle.«

I-not know, how it you please.«

»â trût kint«, sprâchens alle.

»ab dear child«, spoke-they all.

»ez was an dir ein edeler muot.

3125

»it was in thee a noble spirit.

unkünde ist manegem herzen guot

strangeness is to-many heart good

und lêret maneger hande tugent.

and teaches of-many kind virtue.

trût geselle, süeziu jugent,

dear companion, sweet youth,

gebenediet sî daz lant

blessed be the land

von gote, dâ ie dekein marschant

3130

by God, where ever any merchant

erzôch sô tugentlîchez kint!

raised so virtuous child!

alle die kûnege, die nu sint,

all the kings, who now are,

dien erzen alle ein kint niht baz.

they raised all a child not better.

nu liebez kint, nu sage uns daz:

now dear child, now tell us that:

dîn höfscher vater, wie nant er dich?»

3135

thy courtly father, how named he thee?»

»Tristan«, sprach er, »Tristan heiz ich.«

»Tristan«, spoke he, »Tristan am-called I.«

»dê us adjût«, sprach einer dô,

»God us help«, spoke one then,

»durch got, wie nant er dich dô sô?

»for God, how named he thee then so?

du wærest zwâre baz genant

thou wouldst-be truly better named

juvente bête et la riant,

3140

youth fair and the laughing,

diu schœne jugent, diu lachende.«

the fair youth, the laughing.«

sus ritens ir mære machende,
thus rode-they their tales making,

dirre sus und jener sô.
this-one thus and that-one so.

ir kurzewîle diu was dô
their pastime it was then

3145 niwan mit disem kinde.
only with this child.

sus frâgete daz gesinde,
thus asked the household,

swaz jegelîchen dô gezam.
whatever each-one then befitted.

in kurzen zîten ez dô kam,
in short times it then came,

Tristan daz er die burc gesach;
Tristan that he the castle saw;

3150 von einer linden er dô brach
from a linden he then broke

zwei schapel wol geloubet.
two chaplets well leafed.

einez sazte er ûf sîn houbet,
one set he on his head,

daz ander er dô wîter maz,
the other he then wider measured,

dem jegermeister bôt er daz:
to-the master-huntsman offered he that:

3155 »ei«, sprach er, »lieber meister mîn,
»ab«, spoke he, »dear master mine,

saget, waz bürge mac diz sîn?
say, what castle may this be?

diz ist ein küniclich kastêl.«
this is a kingly castle.«

der meister sprach: »deist Tintajoêl.«
the master spoke: »that-is Tintajoel.«

»Tintajoël? â welch kastêl!

»Tintajoel? ah what castle!

dê te sal, Tintajoël,

God thee save, Tintajoel,

3160

und allez dîn gesinde!«

and all thy household!«

»â, wol dir süezem kinde!«

»ah, well to-thee sweet child!«

sprâchen sîne geverten dô,

spoke his companions then,

»wis iemer sælic unde frô

»be ever blessed and glad

und dir müeze also wol geschehen,

and to-thee may as well happen,

3165

als vil gerne wirz gesehen.«

as very gladly we-it see.«

Sus kâmen sî zem bûrgetor;

Thus came they to-the castle-gate;

Tristan gehabete dô dâ vor.

Tristan halted then there before.

»ir hêrren«, sprach er aber dô zin,

»you lords«, spoke he again then to-them,

»ine weiz, wan ich iu fremede bin,

»I-not know, for I to-you strange am,

3170

wie iuwer keiner ist genamet:

how of-you any is named:

wan varn ie zwêne und zwêne samet

why-not fare ever two and two together

und rîtet rehte ein ander bî!

and ride rightly each other by!

alsô der hîrz geschaffen sî,

as the hart shaped be,

daz gehûrne daz gê vor,

the antlers that go before,

3175

diu brust dâ nâch in sînem spor,
the breast there after in its track,

die rieben nâch den büegen.
the ribs after the shoulders.

dar nâch sô sult ir füegen,
there after so shall you arrange,

daz daz jungeste lit
that the last member

3180 iesâ den rieben volge mit.
at-once the ribs follow with.

dâ nâch sô sult ir nemen war,
there after so shall you take heed,

daz ze allerjungeste var
that at very-last fare

diu cuire und diu furkîe;
the cuir and the fourchie;

deist rehte jegerîe.
that-is right hunting.

3185 und lâzet iu niht sîn ze gâch,
and let to-you not be too hasty,

rîtet schône ein ander nâch;
ride beautifully each other after;

mîn meister hie und ich sîn kneht,
my master here and I his servant,

wir rîten samet, dunk ez iuch reht
we ride together, (if)-seem it to-you right

und obe ez iu gevalle.«
and if it you please.»

3190 »jâ, trût kint«, sprâchens alle,
»yes, dear child«, spoke-they all,

»swie sô du wilt, als welle wir.«
»however so thou wilt, so want we.«

»diz sî!« sprach er, »nu lîhet mir

»this be!« spoke he, »now lend me

ein horn, daz mir ze mâze sî,

a horn, which to-me to measure be,

und sît ouch des gemant dâ bî,

and be also of-it reminded there by,

swenne ich an hebe, sô hæret mir,

whenever I on raise, so hear me,

und alse ich hürne, als hürnet ir!«

and as I blow, so blow you!«

der meister sprach ime dô zuo:

the master spoke to-him then to:

»vil lieber friunt, hürne unde tuo

»very dear friend, blow and do

rehte als dir gevalle:

just as thee please:

des volge wir dir alle,

in-that follow we thee all,

ich unde die hie mit mir sint.«

I and who here with me are.«

»â boneure«, sprach daz kint,

»ah good-fortune«, spoke the child,

»mit guote, daz lât alsô sîn.«

»with good, that let so be.«

ein kleine hellez hornelîn

a little clear little-born

daz gâbens im an sîne hant.

that gave-they him into his hand.

»nu hin!« sprach er, »allez avant!«

»now forward!« spoke he, »all ahead!«

Sus riten si gerotieret in

Thus rode they in-ranks in

zwêne unde zwêne: als soltez sîn.

two and two: as should-it be.

3195

3200

3205

und als diu rotte gâr in kam,
and as the troop wholly in came,

3210 Tristan sîn hornelîn dô nam
Tristan his little-born then took

und hürnete alsô rîche
and blew so richly

und alsô wunneclîche,
and so delightfully,

jene alle, die dâ mit im riten,
those all, who there with him rode,

daz die vor fröuden kûme erbiten,
that they for joy barely waited,

3215 daz sîn ze helfe kâmen
that they-him to help came

und alle ir horn nâmen
and all their horns took

und hürneten vil schône
and blew very beautifully

mit ime in sîme dône.
with him in his tune.

er fuor in vor ze prîse,
he went to-them before to prize,

3220 si nâch in sîner wîse
they after in his manner

bescheidenlîchen unde wol:
discerningly and well:

diu burc diu wart gedœnes vol.
the castle it became of-sound full.

The Hunt Comes to Court

XXII

The household runs out at the strange horn calls and Mark comes to see; Tristan's heart is drawn to the king, who is his own blood. He greets Mark in French. The huntsman tells Mark how the boy broke the hart and taught them the fourchie and the curee. The court youths lead Tristan before the throne, and the poet describes his beauty and bearing. Mark asks if he is Tristan, binds him to grant a request, and names him master of the hunt; he accepts.

Der küneec und al diu hovediet,

The king and all the court-folk,

dô sî daz fremede jageliet

when they the strange hunting-song

gehôrten unde vernâmen,

heard and perceived,

si erschrâken und erkâmen

they were-frightened and started

vil inneclîche sêre,

very inwardly sorely,

wan ez dâ vor nie mêre

for it there before never more

dâ ze hove wart vernomen.

there at court was heard.

nu was diu rotte iezuo komen

now was the troop now come

vür den palas an die tür;

before the palace at the door;

dâ was vil ingesindes vür

there was much of-household out

geloufen durch den hoveschal.

run for the court-clamor.

si nam grôz wunder über al,

them took great wonder over all,

3225

3230

- 3235 waz des geschelles wære.
what of-the clamor were.
- ouch was der lobebære
also was the praiseworthy
- Marke selbe komen dar,
Mark self come thither,
- nemen dirre mære war,
take of-this tidings heed,
- und mit im manic cûrtois man.
and with him many-a courtly man.
- 3240 nu Tristan den künec sehen began,
now Tristan the king see began,
- er begunde im wol gefallen
he began him well please
- vor den andern allen;
before the others all;
- sîn herze in sunder ûz erlas,
his heart him separately out chose,
- wan er von sînem bluote was:
for he of his blood was:
- 3245 diu natûre zôch in dar.
the nature drew him thither.
- er nam sîn mit den ougen war
he took of-him with the eyes heed
- und begunde in grüezen schône.
and began him greet beautifully.
- in fremedem horndône
in strange horn-tune
- ein ander wîse huob er an:
an other melody raised he on:
- 3250 sô lûte er hürnen began,
so loud he blow began,

daz im nieman an der stunde

that him no-one at the hour

wol gevolgen kunde.

well follow could.

nu des was schiere ein ende:

now of-it was soon an end:

der wol gezogen ellende

the well bred exile

der lie sîn hürnen unde sweic.

he left his blowing and was-silent.

vil schône er gein dem kûnege neic

very beautifully he toward the king bowed

und sprach mit süezem munde

and spoke with sweet mouth

vil suoze, als er wol kunde:

very sweetly, as he well could:

»dê us sal le roi et sa mehnîe:

»God you save the king and his household:

kûnec und sîn massenîe

king and his household

die gehalte got der guote!«

them preserve God the good!«

Marke der wol gemuote

Mark the well spirited

und al sîn ingesinde

and all his household

die danketen dem kinde

they thanked the child

vil tugentlichen unde wol,

very virtuously and well,

als man dem tugenthafte sol.

as one to-the virtuous shall.

3255

3260

3265

»â«, sprâchens al gemeine

»ab«, spoke-they all together

grôze unde kleine,

great and small,

»dê duin dûze âventûre

»God give sweet adventure

3270 si dûze crêatûre:

to-this sweet creature:

got gebe sûeze âventiure

God give sweet adventure

sô sûezer crêatiure!«

to-so sweet creature!«

Der künec der nam des kindes war;

The king he took of-the child heed;

den jeger den besande er dar:

the huntsman him summoned he thither:

3275 »sage an«, sprach er, »wer ist diz kint,

»say on«, spoke he, »who is this child,

des wort sô wol besniten sint?«

whose words so well cut are?«

»â hêrre, ez ist ein Parmenois,

»ab lord, it is a Parmenois,

sô wunderlîchen cûrtois

so wondrously courtly

und alsô rehte tugentsam,

and so right virtuous,

3280 daz ichz an kinde nie vernam,

that I-it in child never perceived,

und giht, er heize Tristan,

and says, he is-called Tristan,

und sî sîn vater ein koufman.

and be his father a merchant.

ichn geloube ez aber niemer:

I believe it however never:

wie hæte ein koufman iemer
how would-have a merchant ever

in sîner unmüezekeit
in his occupation

3285

sô grôze muoze an in geleit?
so great leisure on him laid?

solt er die muoze mit im hân,
should he the leisure with him have,

der sich unmuoze sol begân?
who himself occupation shall pursue?

â, hêrre, er ist sô tugenthafft,
ah, lord, he is so virtuous,

seht, dise niuwe meisterschaft,
look, this new mastery,

3290

alsô wir nû ze hove sîn komen,
as we now to court are come,

die hân wir gâr von ime genomen.
it have we wholly from him taken.

und hœret wunderlîchen list:
and hear wondrous art:

rehte als der hirz geschaffen ist,
right as the hart shaped is,

als ist er her ze hove brâht:
so is it hither to court brought:

3295

wâ wart ie list sô wol bedâht?
where was ever art so well considered?

nû sehet, daz houbet daz gât vor,
now see, the head that goes before,

diu brust dâ nâch in sînem spor,
the breast there after in its track,

büege unde bein, diz unde daz,
shoulders and legs, this and that,

- 3300 daz wart schöner unde baz
that was more-beautifully and better
- ze hove geprîsantet nie,
to court presented never,
- seht dort, gesâhet ir ie
look there, saw you ever
- sus gemachete furkîe?
thus made fourchie?
- ine vernam von jegerîe
I heard of hunting
- 3305 solher liste nie niht mê.
of-such arts never anything more.
- dar zuo liez er uns sehen ê,
there to let he us see before,
- wie man den hîrz enbesten sol:
how one the hart break shall:
- diu kunst gevallet mir sô wol,
the art pleases me so well,
- daz ich niemer hîrz noch tier
that I never hart nor beast
- 3310 gehouwen wil in vier quartier,
hewn will into four quarters,
- und solte ich iemer mêre jagen.«
and should I ever more hunt.»
- sus begunde er sînem hêrren sagen
thus began he to-his lord tell
- von ende sîniu mære,
from end his tales,

wie vollekomen er wære

how perfect he were

an höfscher jegerîc

in courtly hunting

3315

und wie er die curîc

and how he the curée

den hunden vür leite.

to-the hounds before laid.

und swaz der jeger seite,

and whatever the huntsman said,

des nam der künec vil guote war

of-it took the king very good heed

und hiez dem kinde ruofen dar,

and bade to-the child call thither,

3320

die jegere ze herbergen varn,

the huntsmen to lodging fare,

ir ambet und ir dinc bewarn.

their office and their matter guard.

die kêrten umbe und riten dan.

they turned around and rode away.

der jegermeister Tristan

the master-huntsman Tristan

der gap sîn hornelîn dâ wider

he gave his little-horn there back

3325

und erbeizete zuo der erde nider.

and dismounted to the earth down.

daz junge hovegesinde

the young court-household

daz lief engegen dem kinde

it ran toward the child

und condewierte ez schône

and escorted it beautifully

under armen vür die krône.

under arms before the crown.

3330

ouch kunde er selbe schône gân.

also could he self beautifully go.

dar zuo was ime der lîp getân,

there to was to-him the body made,

als ez diu Minne gebôt:

as it the Love commanded:

sîn munt was rehte rôsenrôt,

his mouth was right rose-red,

3335 sîn varwe licht, sîn ougen klâr;

his color bright, his eyes clear;

brûnlûter was ime daz hâr,

brown-bright was to-him the hair,

gerûchet bî dem ende;

curled at the end;

sîne arme und sîne hende

his arms and his hands

wol gestellet unde blanc;

well shaped and white;

3340 sîn lîp ze guoter mâze lanc;

his body to good measure long;

sîne fûeze und sîniu bein,

his feet and his legs,

dar an sîn schœne almeistec schein,

there on his beauty mostly shone,

diu stuonden sô ze prîse wol,

they stood so to prize well,

als manz an manne prîsen sol.

as one-it in man praise shall.

3345 sîn gewant, als ich iu hân geseit,

his clothing, as I to-you have said,

daz was mit grôzer hovescheit

that was with great courtliness

nâch sînem lîbe gesniten.

after his body cut.

an gebærdē unde an schœnen siten
in bearings and in fair manners

was ime sô rehte wol geschehen,
was to-him so right well happened,

daz man in gerne mohte sehen. 3350
that one him gladly could see.

Marke sach Tristanden an:

Mark looked Tristan at:

»friunt«, sprach er, »heizest dû Tristan?«
»friend«, spoke he, »art-called thou Tristan?«

»jâ, hêrre, Tristan. dê us sal!«
»yes, lord, Tristan. God you save!«

»dê us sal, bêas vassal!«
»God you save, fair vassal!«

»merzî«, sprach er, »gentil rois, 3355
»thanks«, spoke he, »noble king,

edeler künec Kurnewalois,
noble king of-Cornwall,

ir und iuwer gesinde
you and your household

ir sît von gotes kinde
you are by God's child

iemer gebenedîet!«
ever blessed!«

dô wart gemerzîet 3360
then was thanked

wunder von der hovediet.
wonder by the court-folk.

si triben niwan daz eine liet:
they drove only the one song:

»Tristan, Tristan li Parmenois,
»Tristan, Tristan the Parmenois,

cum est bêas et cum cûrtois!«
how is fair and how courtly!«

3365 Marke sprach aber Tristande zuo:

Mark spoke again to-Tristan to:

»ich sage dir, Tristan, waz du tuo:

»I tell thee, Tristan, what thou do:

du solt mich einer bete gewern,

thou shalt me a request grant,

der enwil ich niht von dir enbern.«

of-it will I not from thee forgo.«

»swaz ir gebietet, hêrre mîn.«

»whatever you command, lord mine.«

3370 »du solt mîn jegermeister sîn.«

»thou shalt my master-huntsman be.«

hie wart ein michel lahter van.

here was a great laughter from-it.

hier under sprach dô Tristan:

here under spoke then Tristan:

»hêrre, gebietet über mich.

»lord, command over me.

swaz ir gebietet, daz bin ich;

whatever you command, that am I;

3375 iuwer jeger und iuwer dienstman,

your huntsman and your vassal,

daz bin ich, also ich beste kan.«

that am I, as I best can.«

»mit guote, friunt«, sprach Marke dô,

»with good, friend«, spoke Mark then,

»diz ist gelobet, nu sî alsô!«

»this is vowed, now be so!«

Master of the Hunt

XXIII

Unaware that he has come home, Tristan becomes a member of the court, where Mark bids everyone treat him kindly, and he serves the king constantly. Within a week Mark rides hunting with him, but Tristan leaves the relays to the local huntsmen, who know the ground. When the hart is taken, he breaks it again for the court, which declares that no one knows the art better. He becomes a dear courtier, serving rich and poor alike and sharing in all their games.

Nu Tristan der ist ze hûse komen

Now Tristan he is to home come

unwizzende, alse ir habet vernomen,

unknowing, as you have heard,

3380

und wânde doch ellende sîn.

and thought yet exiled be.

der unverwânde vater sîn,

the unsuspected father his,

Marke der tugenderîche,

Mark the virtue-rich,

der gewarp vil tugentlîche;

he acted very virtuously;

ouch was des dô vil michel nôt:

also was of-it then very great need:

3385

er bat besunder unde gebôt

he asked apart and commanded

al dem hovegesinde,

all the court-household,

daz sî dem fremeden kinde

that they to-the foreign child

guot unde genædic wæren

good and gracious were

3390 und daz sim êre bæren

and that they-him honor should-bear

mit rede und mit gesellekeit.

with speech and with companionship.

des wârens alle samet bereit

of-that were-they all together ready

mit willeclîchem muote.

with willing spirit.

sus was Tristan der guote

thus was Tristan the good

3395 des küneges ingesinde dô.

of-the king household then.

der sach in gerne und was sîn frô,

he saw him gladly and was of-him glad,

wan in truog ouch sîn herze dar,

for him bore also his heart thither,

und nam sîn gerne und ofte war,

and took of-him gladly and often heed,

wan er was ze allen zîten

for he was at all times

3400 höfeschliche an sîner sîten

courteously at his side

und truog in sînen dienst an

and bore him his service on

als ofte als er sîn state gewan.

as often as he of-it occasion gained.

swâ Marke was odr swar er gie,

wherever Mark was or whither he went,

dâ was Tristan der ander ie,

there was Tristan the second ever,

- und nam daz Marke wol vür guot: 3405
and took that Mark well for good:
- er truog im harte holden muot
he bore him very gracious spirit
- und tete im wol, swenne er in sach.
and did him well, whenever he him saw.
- in den dingen ez geschach:
in the things it happened:
- innerhalp den ahte tagen
within the eight days
- reit Marke selbe mit im jagen 3410
rode Mark self with him hunt
- und hovegesindes vil dâ mite,
and of-court-household much there with,
- schouwen sînen jagesite
see his hunting-custom
- und sîner künste nemen war.
and of-bis arts take heed.
- nu hiez im Marke bringen dar
now bade him Mark bring thither
- sîn jagephert und gab im daz. 3415
bis hunting-horse and gave him that.
- Tristan wart nie geriten baz,
Tristan was never mounted better,
- wan ez was starc, schœene unde snel.
for it was strong, fair and swift.
- ein hornelîn süeze unde hel
a little-born sweet and clear
- hiez er im geben an sîne hant.
bade he him give into his hand.
- »Tristan«, sprach er, »nu wis gemant, 3420
»Tristan«, spoke he, »now be reminded,
- daz dû mîn jegermeister bist,
that thou my master-huntsman art,

und zeige uns dīnen jagelist;
and show us thy hunting-art;

nim dīne hunde unde var
take thy bounds and fare

und schicke dīne warte dar,
and send thy relays thither,

3425 dâ sî dich rehte dunken stân.«
where they thee rightly seem stand.»

»nein, hêrre, ezn mac sô niht ergân,«
»no, lord, it may so not go,«

sprach aber der hōfsche Tristan,
spoke again the courtly Tristan,

»heizet die jegere kêren dan,
»bid the huntsmen turn away,

die suln die warte sâzen
they shall the relays set

3430 und suln von ruore lâzen:
and shall from pack let-slip:

die erkennennt hie ze lande sich
they know here in land themselves

und wizzent michel baz dan ich,
and know much better than I,

wâ der hîrz hin zîuhet
where the hart thither draws

und vor den hunden flîuhet;
and before the bounds flees;

3435 die erkennennt die gelegenheit.
they know the lie-of-land.

sô bin ich, der hie nie gereit,
so am I, who here never rode,

und bin mitalle ein fremede kneht.«
and am altogether a foreign servant.»

»daz weiz got, Tristan, dû hâst reht:
»that knows God, Tristan, thou hast right:

du enkanst dich hier an niht bewarn.

thou canst thyself here at not guard.

die jegere müezen selbe varn

the huntsmen must self fare

3440

und sich verrihten under in.«

and themselves arrange among them.«

hie mite kêrten die jegere hin

here with turned the huntsmen thither

und koppelten ir hunde

and coupled their bounds

und stalten an der stunde

and set at the hour

ir warte, als sî wol wisten wâ,

their relays, as they well knew where,

3445

und liezen zeinem hirze sâ

and let-slip at-a hart at-once

und jageten den ze strîte

and hunted it to battle

unz gein der âbentzîte;

until toward the evening-time;

do erliefen in die hunde.

then overran it the bounds.

und an der selben stunde

and at the same hour

3450

kam Marke unde sîn Tristan

came Mark and his Tristan

und mit in zwein manc hoveman

and with them two many-a courtier

gerant ze dem gevelle.

running to the fall.

dô wart grôz horngeschelle

then was great horn-clamor

in maneger slahte dône:

in of-many kind tune:

3455

si hürneten sô schône,

they blew so beautifully,

daz ez Marken sanfte tete

that it to-Mark softly did

und mit im manegem an der stete.

and with him to-many at the place.

Nu sî den hirz gevalten,

Now they the hart felled,

3460 ir meister sî dar stalten

their master they thither set

Tristanden, den heinlichen gast,

Tristan, the familiar guest,

und bâten, daz er sî den bast

and asked, that he them the breaking

von ende zende lieze sehen.

from end to-end should-let see.

Tristan der sprach: »diz sol geschehen!«

Tristan he spoke: »this shall happen!«

3465 und mit der rede bereite er sich.

and with the speech prepared he himself.

nu wæne ich wol und dunket mich,

now think I well and seems to-me,

daz ez undurfte wære,

that it needless were,

ob ich iu zwir ein mære

if I to-you twice a tale

nâch ein ander vür leite.

after each other before laid.

3470 rehte als ich iu ê seite

just as I to-you before told

von jenem hirze, reht alsô

of that hart, just so

enbaste er aber disen dô.

broke he again this-one then.

den bast und die furkîe,
the breaking and the fourchie,

die kunst von der curîe,
the art of the curee,

dô si die begunden sehen, 3475
when they them began see,

si begunden eines mundes jehen,
they began of-one mouth say,

daz nieman von dem liste
that no-one of the art

niht bezzers enwiste
nothing better knew

noch niemer kunde ervinden.
nor never could find-out.

der künec der hiez dô binden 3480
the king he bade then bind

den hirz ûf unde kêrte dan,
the hart up and turned away,

er und sîn jegere Tristan
he and his huntsman Tristan

und al sîn massenîe.
and all his household.

mit gehürne und mit furkîe
with antlers and with fourchie

riten si dô ze hûse wider. 3485
rode they then to home back.

als was der guote Tristan sider
so was the good Tristan since

ein lieber hoveman under in.
a dear courtier among them.

künec und gesinde heten in
king and household had him

in guoter geselleschaft.
in good companionship.

- 3490 ouch was er alsô dienesthaft
also was he so serviceable
 dem armen und dem rîchen,
to-the poor and to-the rich,
 möhte er ir iegelîchen
could he of-them each-one
 ûf sîner hant getragen hân,
on his hand carried have,
 daz hæte er gerne getân.
that would-have he gladly done.
- 3495 die sælde hete im got gegeben,
the fortune had to-him God given,
 er kunde und wolte in allen leben:
he could and would to-them all live:
 lachen, tanzen, singen,
laugh, dance, sing,
 rîten, loufen, springen,
ride, run, leap,
 zuhten unde schallen,
frolic and make-merry,
- 3500 daz kunde er mit in allen.
that could he with them all.
 er lebete, swie man wolde
he lived, however one would
 und als diu jugent solde.
and as the youth should.
 swes ir dekeiner began,
whatever of-them any began,
 daz huob er iemer mit im an.
that raised he ever with him on.

The Harper

XXIV

One day after dinner a Welsh harper plays a lay before Mark, and Tristan, sitting at his feet, tells the harper it is the Bretons' lay of Guron. The harper hands him the harp. Tristan tunes it and plays preludes and airs so sweetly that the whole court runs to hear him. Mark marvels that he could conceal such arts; Tristan plays the lay of Graland's lady, and many forget their own names, praising the merchant who fathered such a son.

Nu gefuogete sich daz,

Now happened itself that,

3505

daz Marke an einem tage gesaz

that Mark on a day sat

ein lützel nâch der ezzenzît,

a little after the meal-time,

sô man doch kurzewîle pflît,

as one yet pastime practices,

und losete sêre an einer stete

and listened sorely at a place

einem leiche, den ein harphære tete,

to-a lay, which a harper did,

3510

ein meister sîner liste,

a master of-his arts,

der beste, den man wiste;

the best, whom one knew;

der selbe was ein Gâlois.

the same was a Welshman.

nu kam Tristan der Parmenois

now came Tristan the Parmenois

3515 und saz ze sînen fûezen dar

and sat at his feet there

und nam sô flîzeclîche war

and took so diligently heed

des leiches und der sûezen noten,

of-the lay and of-the sweet notes,

wære ez im an den lîp geboten,

were it to-him on the life commanded,

ern möhte ez niht verswigen hân.

he could it not kept-silent have.

3520 sîn muot begunde im ûf gân,

his spirit began to-him up go,

sîn herze daz wart muotes vol.

his heart it became of-spirit full.

»meister«, sprach er, »ir harphet wol:

»master«, spoke he, »you harp well:

die noten sint rehte vür brâht

the notes are rightly forth brought

senelîche und also ir wart gedâht.

yearningly and as of-them was intended.

3525 die macheten Britûne

them made Bretons

von mînem hêrn Gurûne

of my lord Guron

und von sîner friundinne.«

and of his lady-love.«

diz nam in sîne sinne

this took into his senses

der harphære und losete allez dar,

the harper and listened all there,

3530 als er der rede niht næme war,

as-if he of-the speech not should-take heed,

unz er den leich vollante.

until he the lay completed.

gein dem kinde er sich dô wante:

toward the child he himself then turned:

»waz weistu«, sprach er, »liebez kint,

»what knowest-thou«, spoke he, »dear child,

von wannen dise noten sint?

from whence these notes are?

kanstu ihtes iht hier an?«

canst-thou of-anything anything here in?«

»jâ, schœner meister,« sprach Tristan:

»yes, fair master,« spoke Tristan:

»ich hete es hie vor meisterschaft;

»I had of-it here before mastery;

nû hât ez aber sô kleine kraft,

now has it however so little strength,

daz ich vor iu niht engetar.«

that I before you not dare.«

»nein, friunt, sê dise harphen dar,

»no, friend, see this harp there,

lâ hœren, welher hande

let hear, of-which kind

kan man in dînem lande?«

knows one in thy land?«

»gebietet ir daz, meister mîn,

»command you that, master mine,

und sol ez mit iurm urloube sîn,

and shall it with your leave be,

daz ich iu harphe?« sprach Tristan.

that I to-you harp?« spoke Tristan.

»jâ, trût geselle, sê, harphe an!«

»yes, dear companion, see, harp on!«

3535

3540

3545

Als er die harphen dô genam,

When he the harp then took,

sînen handen sî vil wol gezam;

to-his hands it very well befitted;

die wâren, alse ich hân gelesen,

they were, as I have read,

3550 daz sî niht schœner kunden wesen,

that they not fairer could be,

weich unde linde, kleine, lanc

soft and gentle, slender, long

und rehte alsam ein harm blanc;

and right like an ermine white;

mit den sô ruorte er unde sluoc

with them so touched he and struck

ursuoche und notelîn genuoc

preludes and little-notes enough

3555 seltsæne, süeze, guote.

rare, sweet, good.

hie mite wart ime ze muote

here with became to-him to spirit

umbe sîne leiche von Britûn.

about his lays from Brittany.

sus nam er sînen plectrûn,

thus took he his plectrum,

nagel unde seiten zôher,

pegs and strings drew-be,

3560 dise nider, jene hôher,

these down, those higher,

rehte als er si wolte hân.

just as he them would have.

nu diz was schiere getân:

now this was soon done:

Tristan, der niuwe spilman,

Tristan, the new player,

sîn niuwez ambet huob er an

his new office raised he on

mit flîzeclîchem ruoche.

with diligent care.

3565

sîne noten und sîne ursuoche,

his notes and his preludes,

sîne seltsæne grûeze

his rare greetings

die harphete er sô sûeze

them harped he so sweetly

und machete sî schœne

and made them beautiful

mit schœnem seitgedœne,

with beautiful string-music,

3570

daz iegelîcher dar zuo lief,

that each-one there to ran,

dirre jenem dar nâher rief.

this-one to-that-one there nearer called.

vil schiere kam diu hoveschar

very soon came the court-troop

almeistec loufende dar

mostly running thither

und wânde niemer komen ze fruô.

and thought never come too early.

3575

nu Marke der sach allez zuo

now Mark he looked all to

und saz allez trahtende,

and sat all pondering,

sînen friunt Tristanden ahtende

his friend Tristan heeding

und wunderte in des sêre,

and wondered him of-it sorely,

- 3580 daz er sô höfsche lère
that he so courtly teaching
 und alsô guote liste,
and so good arts,
 die er an im selben wiste,
which he in him self knew,
 alsô verhelen kunde.
so conceal could.
 nu Tristan der begunde
now Tristan he began
- 3585 einen leich dâ lâzen klingen in
a lay there let ring in
 von der vil stolzen friundin
of the very proud lady-love
 Grâlandes des schoenen.
of-Graland the fair.
 do begunde er suoze dœnen
then began he sweetly sound
 und harphen sô ze prîse
and harp so to prize
- 3590 in britûnscher wîse,
in Breton manner,
 daz maneger dâ stuont unde saz,
that many-a-one there stood and sat,
 der sîn selbes namen vergaz.
who his own name forgot.
 da begunden herze und ôren
there began hearts and ears
 tumben unde tôren
grow-dull and grow-foolish
- 3595 und ûz ir rehte wanken;
and out-of their right waver;

dâ wurden gedanken

there were thoughts

in maneger wîse vür brâht.

in many ways forth brought.

dâ wart vil ofte gedâht:

there was very often thought:

»â, sælic sî der koufman,

»ah, blessed be the merchant,

der ie sô höfschen sun gewan!«

who ever so courtly son gained!«

3600

jâ sîne vinger wîze

yes his fingers white

die giengen wol ze flîze

they went well to diligence

walgende in den seiten.

rolling in the strings.

si begunden dæne breiten,

they began tunes spread,

daz der palas voller wart.

that the palace fuller became.

3605

dane wart ouch ougen niht gespart,

there was also of-eyes not spared,

der kaphete vil manegez dar

of-them gaped very many thither

und nâmen sîner hende war.

and took of-his hands heed.

The Second Lay

XXV

Tristan plays the lay of Thisbe and sings in Breton, Welsh, Latin, and French, and no one can tell whether his harping or his singing is sweeter. Mark asks him to play for him at night and learns which masters taught him fiddle, harp, rote, lyre, and sambuca. Men of many lands test him in their languages, and he answers each. Mark makes him his companion and entrusts to him his sword, spurs, crossbow, and golden horn. The poet then turns back to Rual.

Nu dirre leich der was getân;

Now this lay it was done;

3610 nu hiez der guote künec dar gân

now bade the good king thither go

und sprach, daz man in bæte,

and spoke, that one him should-ask,

daz er noch einen tæte.

that he yet one should-do.

»mû voluntiers«, sprach Tristan.

»very gladly«, spoke Tristan.

rîliche huob er aber an

richly raised he again on

3615 einen senelîchen leich als ê

a yearning lay as before

de la cûrtoise Tispê

of the courtly Thisbe

von der alten Bâbilône.

of the old Babylon.

den harphete er sô schône

it harped he so beautifully

und gie den noten sô rehte mite

and went the notes so rightly with

3620 nâch rehte meisterlîchem site,

after right masterly custom,

daz es den harphær wunder nam;
that it the harper wonder took;

und als ez ie ze staten kam,
and as it ever to purpose came,

sô lie der tugenderîche
so let the virtue-rich-one

suoze unde wunneclîche
sweetly and delightfully

sîne schanzûne fliegen in.
his songs fly in.

3625

er sanc diu leichnotelîn
he sang the lay-notes

britûnsche und gâloise,
Breton and Welsh,

latînsche und franzoise
Latin and French

sô suoze mit dem munde,
so sweetly with the mouth,

daz nieman wizzen kunde,
that no-one know could,

3630

wederez süezer wære
which-of-the-two sweeter were

oder baz lobebære,
or better praiseworthy,

sîn harphen oder sîn singen.
his harping or his singing.

sich huop von sînen dingen
itself raised from his things

und von sîner fuoge
and from his skill

3635

rede unde zal genuoge:
talk and tale enough:

si jâhen al gelîche,
they said all alike,

sine vernæmen in dem rîche
they should-perceive in the kingdom

an einem man die fuoge nie.
in a man the skill never.

3640 der sprach dort und dirre hie:
that-one spoke there and this-one here:

»â, waz ist diz von kinde?
»ab, what is this for child?

waz hân wir ze gesinde?
what have we to household?

ez ist allez umbe den wint,
it is all for the wind,

elliu diu kint, diu nu sint,
all the children, who now are,

3645 wider unserm Tristande.«
against our Tristan.«

Tristan dô der verande
Tristan when he ended

sînen leich nâch sîner ger,
his lay after his desire,

Marke sprach: »Tristan, gâ her!
Mark spoke: »Tristan, go hither!

der dich dâ hât gelêret,
who thee there has taught,

3650 der sî vor gote geêret
he be before God honored

und dû mit ime! daz ist vil wol.
and thou with him! that is very well.

dîne leiche ich gerne hoeren sol
thy lays I gladly hear shall

underwîlen wider naht,
at-times toward night,

sô dû doch niht geslâfen maht.
since thou yet not sleep canst.

diz tuostu wol mir unde dir.« 3655
this dost-thou well for-me and thee.

»jâ, hêrre, wol.« »nu sage mir,
»yes, lord, well.« »now tell me,

kanstû kein ander seitspil noch?«
canst-thou any other string-play yet?

»nein, hêrre«, sprach er. »nû iedoch,
»no, lord, spoke he. »now yet,

rehte also lieb als ich dir sî,
just as dear as I to-thee be,

Tristan, dâ frâge ich dich es bî.« 3660
Tristan, there ask I thee it by.

»hêrre«, sprach Tristan al zehant,
»lord«, spoke Tristan all at-once,

»irn dorftet mich niht hân gemant
»you needed me not have reminded

sô verre, ich seite ez iu doch wol,
so far, I would-tell it to-you yet well,

sî ich ez iu doch sagen sol
since I it to-you yet tell shall

und ir ez wellet wizen. 3665
and you it want know.

hêrre, ich hân geflizen
lord, I have striven

an iegelîchem seitspil
at each string-play

und enkan doch keines also vil,
and know yet none as much,

ine kunde es gerne mêre.
unless-I knew it gladly more.

ouch hân ich dise lêre 3670
also have I this teaching

niht vil manegen tac getriben,
not very many-a day pursued,

und zwâre ich bin derbî beliben
and truly I am there-by remained

under mâlen kûme siben jâr
at times barely seven years

oder lützel mêre, daz ist wâr.
or little more, that is true.

3675 mich lêrten Parmenîen
me taught Parmenians

videln unde symphonîen;
fiddle and symphony;

harphen unde rotten
harp and rote

daz lêrten mich Galotten,
that taught me Welshmen,

zwêne meister Gâloise.
two masters Welsh.

3680 mich lêrten Britûnoise,
me taught Bretons,

die wâren ûz der stat von Lût,
who were from the town of Lut,

rehte lîren unde sambiût.«
rightly lyre and sambuca.»

»sambiût, waz ist daz, lieber man?«
»sambuca, what is that, dear man?«

»daz beste seitspil, daz ich kan.«
»the best string-play, which I know.«

3685 »seht«, sprach daz gesinde,
»look«, spoke the household,

»got der hât disem kinde
»God he has to-this child

ûf rehte wunneclîchez leben
for right delightful life

sîner genâden vil gegeben.«
of-his graces much given.»

Marke der frâgte in aber dô mê:

Mark he asked him again then more:

»Tristan, ich hôrte dich doch ê

»Tristan, I heard thee yet before

3690

britûnsch singen und gâlois,

Breton sing and Welsh,

guot latîne und franzois:

good Latin and French:

kanstû die sprâche?» »hêrre, jâ,

canst-thou the languages?» »lord, yes,

billîche wol.« nu kam iesâ

fittingly well.« now came at-once

der hûfe dar gedrunge;

the crowd thither pressed;

3695

und swer iht fremeder zungen

and whoever any of-foreign tongues

von den bîlanden kunde,

of the neighbor-lands knew,

der versuochte in sâ zestunde:

he tested him straightway at-once:

dirre sus und jener sô.

this-one thus and that-one so.

hier under antwurte er dô

here under answered he then

3700

höfslîche ir aller mæren:

courteously to-their of-all tales:

Norwægen, Îrlândæren,

Norwegians, Irishmen,

Almânjen, Schotten unde Tenen.

Germans, Scots and Danes.

da begunde sich manc herze senen

there began itself many-a heart yearn

nâch Tristandes fuoge.

after Tristan's skill.

3705

dâ wolten genuoge

there would many

vil gerne sîn gewesen als er.

very gladly have been as he.

im sprach vil maneges herzen ger

to-him spoke very of-many heart's desire

suoze und innecklichen zuo:

sweetly and inwardly to:

3710 »â, Tristan, wære ich also duo!

»ah, Tristan, were I as thou!

Tristan, dû maht gerne leben;

Tristan, thou canst gladly live;

Tristan, dir ist der wunsch gegeben

Tristan, to-thee is the wish given

aller der fuoge, die kein man

of-all the skill, which any man

ze dirre werlde haben kan.«

in this world have can.«

3715 ouch macheten sî hier under

also made they here under

mit rede michel wunder:

with speech great wonder:

»hôrâ!« sprach dirre, »hôrâ!« sprach der,

»hark!« spoke this-one, »hark!« spoke that-one,

»elliu diu werlt diu høre her!

»all the world it hear hither!

ein vierzehenjærec kint

a fourteen-year-old child

3720 kan al die liste, die nu sint!«

knows all the arts, which now are!«

Der künec sprach: »Tristan, høre her!

The king spoke: »Tristan, hear hither!

an dir ist allez, des ich ger,

in thee is all, which I desire,

dû kanst allez, daz ich wil,
thou canst all, which I want,

jagen, sprâche, seitspil.
hunt, languages, string-play.

nu suln ouch wir gesellen sîn,
now shall also we companions be,

3725

dû der mîn und ich der dîn.
thou the mine and I the thine.

tages sô suln wir rîten jagen,
by-day so shall we ride hunt,

des nahtes uns hie heime tragen
by night ourselves here at-home bear

mit höfslîchen dîngen:
with courtly things:

harphen, videln, singen,
harp, fiddle, sing,

3730

daz kanstu wol, daz tuo du mir;
that canst-thou well, that do thou for-me;

sô kan ich spil, daz tuon ich dir,
so know I game, that do I for-thee,

des ouch dîn herze lîhte gert:
which also thy heart perhaps desires:

schoœniu kleider unde phert,
fair clothes and horses,

der gibe ich dir, swie vil du wilt:
of-them give I thee, however many thou wilt:

3735

dâ mite hân ich dir wol gespilt.
there with have I to-thee well played.

sich, mîn swert und mîne sporn,
see, my sword and my spurs,

mîn armbrust und mîn guldîn horn,
my crossbow and my golden horn,

geselle, daz bevilhe ich dir;
companion, that commend I to-thee;

3740 des underwint dich, des phlic mir
of-it take-charge thyself of-it take-care for-me

und wis du höfsch unde frô.«
and be thou courtly and glad.»

sus was der ellende dô
thus was the exile then

da ze hove ein trût gesinde.
there at court a dear household-member.

ezn gesach nie man von kinde
it saw never man from child

3745 die sælde, die man an im sach.
the fortune, which one in him saw.

swaz er getete, swaz er sprach,
whatever he did, whatever he spoke,

daz dûhte und was ouch alse guot,
that seemed and was also so good,

daz ime diu werlt holden muot
that to-him the world gracious spirit

und inneclîchez herze truoc.
and inward heart bore.

3750 hie mite sî der rede genuoc.
here with be of-the speech enough.

wir suln diz mære legen nider
we shall this tale lay down

und grîfen aber an jenez wider,
and grip again on that back,

sîn vater, der marschalch dan Rûal
his father, the marshal lord Rual

li foitenant et li lêal,
the lieutenant and the loyal,

3755 waz der nâch ime getete,
what he after him did,

dô er in verloren hete.
when he him lost bad.

Rual's Search

XXVI

Rual sails to Norway and then Ireland in search of Tristan and, when his money fails, sends his men home and wanders for more than three years as a beggar, until his looks are gone. In Denmark he meets the two pilgrims, who describe the boy and tell him they left him at Tintajoel in Cornwall. Rual hurries there, reaches the minster early on a Saturday, and asks an old courtier, who tells him of the stranger Tristan.

Dan Rúal li foitenant

Lord Rual the lieutenant

der schiffete über mer zehant

he sailed over sea at-once

mit michelem guote,

with great goods,

wan ime was wol ze muote,

for to-him was well to spirit,

ern wolte niemer wider komen,

he would never back come,

ern hæte eteswaz vernomen

unless-he had something heard

endelicher mære,

of-certain tidings,

wâ sîn junchêrre wære,

where his young-lord were,

und stiez ze Norwæge zuo.

and landed at Norway to.

dâ vorschete er spâte unde fruon

there searched he late and early

in allem dem lande,

in all the land,

nâch sînem friunt Tristande.

after his friend Tristan.

3760

3765

waz half daz? ern was dâ niht,
what helped that? he was there not,

3770 al sîn suochen was ein wiht.
all his seeking was a nothing.

und alse er sîn dâ niht envant,
and when he of-him there not found,

dô kêrte er wider Îrlant.
then turned he toward Ireland.

seht, dâ enkunde er iht mê
look, there could-not be anything more

von ime ervorschen danne als ê.
of him find-out than as before.

3775 hie mite begunde er an der habe
here with began he in the possessions

sô swachen unde nemen abe,
so weaken and take off,

daz er sich nider ze fuoze liez
that he himself down to foot let

und sîniu phert verkoufen hiez
and his horses sell bade

und mit dem guote sande
and with the goods sent

3780 sîne liute wider ze lande.
his people back to land.

sich selben liez er in der nôt,
himself self left he in the distress,

wan er gie betelen umbe brôt
for he went begging for bread

und treip daz stætecliche
and drove that constantly

von rîche ze rîche,
from kingdom to kingdom,

3785 von lande ze lande,
from land to land,

vorschende nâch Tristande

searching after Tristan

wol driu jâr oder mêre,

well three years or more,

biz daz er alsô sêre

until that he so sorely

von sînes lîbes schœne kam

from his body's beauty came

und an der varwe als abe genam,

and in the color so off took,

swer in dô hæte gesehen,

whoever him then had seen,

dern hæte niemer gejeihen,

he would-have never said,

daz er ie hêrre würde.

that he ever lord should-become.

die schamelîche bürde

the shameful burden

die truoc der werde dan Rûalt

it bore the worthy lord Rual

gelîche alsam ein art ribalt,

like as a born vagabond,

daz ime dekein sîn armuot,

that to-him any his poverty,

als ez doch weizgot manegem tuot,

as it yet God-knows to-many does,

sînen guoten willen nie benam.

his good will never took.

3790

3795

3800 Nu ez in daz vierde jâr dô kam,
Now it into the fourth year then came,

do was er ze Tenemarke
then was he in Denmark

und vorschete ouch dâ starke
and searched also there strongly

von stete ze stete, hin unde her.
from town to town, thither and thither.

von gotes gnâden dô vant er
by God's grace then found he

3805 die zwêne wallende man,
the two pilgrim men,

die sîn junchêrre Tristan
whom his young-lord Tristan

ûf der waltstrâze vant.
on the forest-road found.

die selben frâgete er zehant;
the same asked he at-once;

die seiten ime ouch mære,
they told him also tidings,

3810 wenne und wie lange es wære,
when and how long it were,

daz si einen knaben hæten gesehen,
that they a boy had seen,

rehte als si in dâ hôrten jehen,
just as they him there heard say,

und wie sîn mit in liezen gân,
and how they-him with them let go,

wie sîn dinc allez was getân
how his matter all was made

3815 an anlûtze unde an hâre,
in face and in hair,

an rede und an gebâre,
in speech and in bearing,

an lîbe und an gewande,
in body and in clothing,

und wie maneger hande
and how many kinds

sprâche unde fuoge er kunde.
language and skill he knew.

zehant und an der stunde
at-once and at the hour

3820

bekande er wol, im wære alsô.
recognized he well, to-him were so.

die wallære bat er dô,
the pilgrims asked he then,

daz sî ez durch got tæten,
that they it for God should-do,

swâ sîn gelâzen hæten,
where they-him left had,

ob sî die stat erkanden,
if they the place knew,

3825

daz si sî im rehte nanden.
that they it to-him rightly should-name.

sus seiten sî Rûâle,
thus told they to-Rual,

ez wære in Kurnewâle
it were in Cornwall

ze Tintajoêle in der stat.
at Tintajoel in the town.

die stat er ime dô nennen bat
the town he to-him then name bade

3830

aber und aber und sprach dô zin:
again and again and spoke then to-them:

»nu wâ lît Kurnewâle hin?«
»now where lies Cornwall thither?«

»ez stôzet,« sprâchen jene zehant,
»it borders,« spoke those at-once,

»jensît Britanje an daz lant.«

»beyond Britain on the land.«

3835 »Â!« dâhte er, »hêrre trehtîn,

»Ah!« thought he, »lord Lord,

diz mac wol dîn genâde sîn.

this may well thy grace be.

ist Tristan, also ich hân vernomen,

(if)-is Tristan, as I have heard,

alsus ze Kurnewâle komen,

thus to Cornwall come,

sô ist er rehte komen hin heim,

so is he rightly come thither home,

3840 wan Marke der ist sîn cœheim.

for Mark he is his uncle.

dâ wîse mich hin, sœzer got!

there guide me thither, sweet God!

â, hêrre got, durch dîn gebot

ah, lord God, for thy command

nu lâ mir noch sô wol geschehen,

now let to-me yet so well happen,

daz ich Tristanden mœze sehen!

that I Tristan may see!

3845 diz mære, daz ich hân vernomen,

this tidings, which I have heard,

daz mœze mir ze fröuden komen.

that may to-me to joys come.

ez dunket mich und ist ouch guot,

it seems to-me and is also good,

ez hât mir mînen swâren muot

it has to-me my heavy spirit

erwecket unde gemachet frô.«

awakened and made glad.«

3850 »sæligen liute«, sprach er dô,

»blessed people«, spoke he then,

»der megede sun müeze iuch bewarn!
»the maiden's son may you guard!

ich wil ûf mîne strâze varn
I will onto my road fare

und sehen, ob ich in vinde.«
and see, whether I him find.«

»nu gewîse iuch nâch dem kinde,
»now may-guide you after the child,

der al der werlde hât gewalt!«
he-who of-all the world has power!«

»genâde«, sprach aber dô Rûalt,
»thanks«, spoke again then Rual,

»gebietet mir, hie ist bite nimê.«
»command me, here is waiting no-more.«

»friunt«, sprâchen jene, »a dê, a dê!«
»friend«, spoke those, »to God, to God!«

Rûal dô sîne strâze gie,
Rual then his road went,

sô daz er sînem lîbe nie
so that he to-his body never

ruowe einen halben tac genam,
rest a half day took,

unz daz er zuo dem mere kam.
until that he to the sea came.

dâ ruowete er, daz was im leit,
there rested he, that was to-him sorrowful,

wan schif diu wâren unbereit;
for ships they were unready;

und also er dô schiffunge vant,
and when he then sailing found,

er fuor ze Britanje in daz lant.
he went to Britain into the land.

3855

3860

3865

durch Britanje streich er dô

through Britain went he then

sô strîteclichen unde alsô,

so strivingly and so,

daz nie kein tac sô langer wart,

that never any day so long-it became,

3870 daz des iht würde gespart,

that of-it anything should-become spared,

ern striche in iemer in die naht.

unless-he went it ever into the night.

dâ zuo gab ime muot unde maht

there to gave to-him spirit and might

der gedinge, der im was geseit.

the hope, which to-him was told.

ez machete ime sîn arbeit

it made to-him his hardship

3875 senfte und harte lihtsam.

soft and very light.

nu er ze Kurnewâle kam,

now he to Cornwall came,

zehant dô frâgte er mære,

at-once then asked he tidings,

wâ Tintajoël wære;

where Tintajoel were;

vîl schiere er des bewîset wart.

very soon he of-it shown was.

3880 sus kêrte er aber ûf sîne vart

thus turned he again on his way

und kam ze Tintajoêle zuo

and came to Tintajoel to

eines sunnenâbendes fruo,

of-a Saturday early,

dô man ze messe solte gân.

when one to mass should go.

sus gieng er vür daz münster stân,
thus went he before the minster stand,

dâ gie daz volc her unde dar
there went the folk hither and thither

3885

und er nam allenthalben war
and he took on-all-sides heed

und spehete wâ unde wâ,
and spied here and there,

obe er ieman funde dâ,
whether he anyone should-find there,

der ime recht unde gebære
who to-him right and suitable

ze sîner frâge wære,
for his question were,

3890

wan er dâhte allez wider sich:
for he thought all to himself:

»diz volc ist allez baz dan ich;
»this folk is all better than I;

swen ich mit rede bevâhe,
whomever I with speech address,

ich fürhte, ez in versmâhe,
I fear, it him disdain,

daz er mir gibe antwûrte umbe in,
that he to-me give answer about him,

3895

sît ich als armer fuore bin.
since I of-such poor kind am.

rât, hêrre got, waz ich getuo!«
counsel, lord God, what I do!«

nu gie der künic Marke zuo
now went the king Mark to

mit einer wunneclîchen schar.
with a delightful company.

- 3900 der getriuwe der nam aber war
the faithful-one he took again heed
 und ersach niht, des er wolte.
and saw nothing, which he would.
 und alse der künec dô solte
and when the king then should
 von messe wider ze hove gân,
from mass back to court go,
 Rûal gie von dem wege stân
Rual went from the way stand
- 3905 und nam sunder dort hin dan
and took aside there thither away
 einen getageten hoveman:
an aged courtier:
 »â, hêrre«, sprach er, »saget mir
»ab, lord«, spoke he, »tell me
 durch iuwer güete, wizzet ir,
for your goodness, (if)-know you,
 ob ein kint hie ze hove sî?
whether a child here at court be?
- 3910 man seit, ez wone dem kûnege bî
one says, it dwell the king by
 und ist daz Tristan genant.«
and is that Tristan named.»
 »ein kint?« sprach jener al zehant,
»a child?« spoke that-one all at-once,
 »ine sage iu niht von kinde:
»I say to-you not of child:
 ein knappe ist hie gesinde,
a squire is here household,
- 3915 der sol schiere nemen swert
who shall soon take sword
 und ist dem kûnege harte wert,
and is to-the king very dear,

wan er kan kunst genuoge

for he knows art enough

und erkennet manege fuoge

and knows many skill

und manege höfslîchiu dinc:

and many courtly things:

der ist ein starker jungelinc

he is a strong youth

3920

mit brûnreidem hâre,

with brown-curled hair,

mit schœnem gebâre

with fair bearing

und ist ein ellender man:

and is an exiled man:

den heize wir hie Tristan.«

him call we here Tristan.«

Rual Finds Tristan

XXVII

Told that a countryman asks for him, Tristan runs to Rual, calling him father, and asks after his mother and brothers; Rual has not been home since he lost him. Tristan leads him, ragged and barefoot but noble in bearing, before Mark, who welcomes him, while the courtiers marvel that the merchant is so noble. Mark has him richly dressed, Tristan has him bathed, and the court declares that such a son needed a noble heart to raise him.

»Nu hêrre«, sprach Rûal iesâ,

»Now lord«, spoke Rual at-once,

»sît ir hie hovegesinde?« »jâ«

»are you here court-household?« »yes«

3925

»hêrre, durch iuwer êre

»lord, for your honor

sô tuot ein lützel mêre,

so do a little more,

wan ir tuot harte wol dar an.

for you do very well there in.

3930 saget ime, hie sî ein armer man,

tell him, here be a poor man,

der welle in sprechen unde sehen.

who wants him speak and see.

ouch muget ir ime des wol verjehen,

also may you to-him of-it well declare,

ich sî von sînem lande.«

I be from his land.«

sus seite jener Tristande,

thus told that-one to-Tristan,

3935 ein sîn lantman wære dâ.

a his countryman were there.

Tristan der kêrte dar iesâ;

Tristan he turned thither at-once;

und al dâ mite daz er in gesach,

and all there with that he him saw,

mit herzen und mit munde er sprach:

with heart and with mouth he spoke:

»nu müeze unser trehtîn

»now may our Lord

3940 iemer gebenedîet sîn,

ever blessed be,

vater, daz ich dich sehen muoz!«

father, that I thee see may!«

diz was sîn aller êrster gruoz;

this was his of-all first greeting;

dâ nâch lief er in lachende an
there after ran he him laughing at

und kuste den getriuwen man,
and kissed the faithful man,

als ein kint sînen vater sol:
as a child his father shall:

3945

daz was vil billich unde wol.
that was very fitting and well.

er was sîn vater und er sîn kint.
he was his father and he his child.

alle die vetere, die nu sint,
all the fathers, who now are,

oder die vor uns wurden ie,
or who before us were ever,

dien getâten alle ir kinde nie
they did all to-their child never

3950

vaterlicher danne er im tete.
more-fatherly than he to-him did.

jâ Tristan der hete an der stete
yes Tristan he had at the place

vater, muoter, mâge, man,
father, mother, kinsmen, vassals,

alle die friunt, dier ie gewan,
all the friends, whom-he ever gained,

enzwischen sînen handen dâ.
between his hands there.

3955

vil inneclîche sprach er: »â,
very inwardly spoke he: »ah,

getriuwer vater guoter,
faithful father good,

sage an, mîn süeziu muoter
tell on, my sweet mother

und mîne bruoder, lebent die noch?«
and my brothers, live they still?«

3960 »ine weiz«, sprach er, »trût sun, iedoch

»I-not know«, spoke he, »dear son, yet

lebeten si, dô ichs nâhest sach,

lived they, when I-them last saw,

wan daz si michel ungemach

except that they great discomfort

von dînen schulden heten.

because-of thy doing bad.

wie si aber sît her geteten,

how they however since then did,

3965 desn kan ich dir niht gesagen,

of-it can I to-thee not say,

wan ine gesach in manegen tagen

for I saw in many days

nieman, den ich erkande;

no-one, whom I knew;

sone kam ich ouch ze lande

so came I also to land

sît der veigen stunde nie,

since the fated hour never,

3970 daz mir an dir sô missegie.«

that to-me with thee so went-amiss.«

»â«, sprach er aber, »trût vater mîn,

»ab«, spoke he again, »dear father mine,

waz sol dirre mære sîn?

what shall of-these tidings be?

dîn schœner lîp war ist der komen?«

thy fair body where is it come?«

»sun, dâ hâstu mirn genomen.«

»son, there hast-thou from-me-it taken.«

3975 »sô wil ich dirn wider geben.«

»so will I to-thee-it back give.«

»sun, daz muge wir ouch geleben.«

»son, that may we also live-to-see.«

»nu, vater, gâ dan ze hove mit mir.«

»now, father, go then to court with me.«

»nein, sun, dar gân ich niht mit dir;

»no, son, thither go I not with thee;

du sihest doch wol, ich wære

thou seest yet well, I were

alsus niht hovebære.«

thus not court-fit.«

3980

»nein, vater«, sprach er, »diz muoz geschehen,

»no, father«, spoke he, »this must happen,

der künec, mîn hêrre, sol dich sehen.«

the king, my lord, shall thee see.«

Rûal, der hœfsche guote,

Rual, the courtly good-one,

der gedâhte in sînem muote:

he thought in his spirit:

»mîn nacketage enwirret niht,

»my nakedness troubles not,

3985

swie mich der künec nu varnde siht,

however me the king now wandering sees,

er wirt mich gerne sehende,

he becomes me gladly seeing,

und wurde ich ime verjehende

and (if)-become I to-him declaring

umbe sînen neven, der hie stât,

about his nephew, who here stands,

swenne ich im alle mîne tât

whenever I to-him all my deed

3990

von aneenge her gesage,

from beginning hither tell,

ez wirt vil schœne, daz ich trage.«

it becomes very fair, what I bear.«

Tristan der nam in an die hant.

Tristan he took him by the hand.

sîn bereitschaft unde sîn gewant,

his equipment and his clothing,

3995 daz was, als ez dô mohte sîn,

that was, as it then could be,

ein vil armez rockelîn

a very poor little-coat

beschaben unde verslizzzen,

scuffed and worn-through,

wâ unde wâ zerissen:

here and there torn:

daz truog er âne mantel an.

that wore he without mantle on.

4000 diu kleider, diu der guote man

the clothes, which the good man

under sînem rocke truoc,

under his coat wore,

diu wâren armeclîch genuoc,

they were poor enough,

vernozzen unde verselwet gâr.

worn-out and soiled wholly.

von unruoche was sîn hâr

from neglect was his hair

4005 an houbet unde an barte

on head and on beard

verwalken alse harte,

matted so hard,

als obe er wilde wære.

as if he wild were.

ouch gie der sagebære

also went the tale-worthy-one

an füezen unde an beinen bar.

on feet and on legs bare.

dar zuo was er sô wetervar, 4010
there to was he so weather-colored,

als alle die von rehte sint,
as all those by right are,

den hunger, frost, sunne unde wint
whom hunger, frost, sun and wind

ir varwe und ir lîch hât benomen.
their color and their complexion has taken.

alsus was er vür Marken komen,
thus was he before Mark come,

daz er im under ougen sach. 4015
that he him under eyes looked.

Marke ze Tristande sprach:
Mark to Tristan spoke:

»sage an, Tristan, wer ist der man?«
»tell on, Tristan, who is the man?«

»mîn vater, hêrre«, sprach Tristan.
»my father, lord«, spoke Tristan.

»hâstu wâr?« »jâ, hêrre mîn.«
»hast-thou truth?« »yes, lord mine.«

»der sol uns willekomen sîn!« 4020
»he shall to-us welcome be!«

sprach aber der tugenderîche.
spoke again the virtue-rich-one.

Rûal neig im hovelîche.
Rual bowed to-him courtly.

hie mite sô kam diu ritterschaft
here with so came the knighthood

zuo geloufen herhaft,
up running like-an-army,

und dâ mite al diu hoveschar, 4025
and there with all the court-troop,

und riefen alle sunder dar:
and called all separately thither:

»sire, sire, dê us sal!«

»sire, sire, God you save!«

nu wizzet doch daz, daz Rûal,

now know yet that, that Rual,

swie unhovebære

however un-court-fit

4030 gewandeshalp er wære,

clothing-wise he were,

er was iedoch zewâre

he was yet truly

an lîbe und an gebære

in body and in bearing

vollekomen unde rîch.

perfect and rich.

er was des lîbes edelîch,

he was of-the body noble,

4035 an geliden und an geliune

in limbs and in build

gewahsen als ein Hiune:

grown as a Giant:

sîn arme und sîniu bein wol lanc;

his arms and his legs very long;

schœne unde hêrlîch was sîn ganc;

fair and lordly was his gait;

sîn lîp was aller wol gestalt.

his body was altogether well shaped.

4040 ern was weder ze junc noch ze alt,

he was neither too young nor too old,

wan in der aller besten tugent,

but in the of-all best vigor,

dâ daz alter und diu jugent

where the age and the youth

dem lebene gebent die besten kraft.

to-the life give the best strength.

er was an rehter hêrschaft

he was in true lordliness

aller keiser genôz.

of-all emperors equal.

4045

sîn stimme alsam ein horn dôz;

his voice like a horn resounded;

sîn rede diu was vil wol besniten.

his speech it was very well cut.

man sach in mit hêrlîchen siten

one saw him with lordly manners

vor al der hêrschefte stân:

before all the nobility stand:

er hete ouch ê alsam getân.

he had also before likewise done.

4050

Hie huop sich michel rûnen

Here raised itself great wbispering

von rittern und von barûnen;

from knights and from barons;

si redeten hin, si redeten her:

they talked thither, they talked hither:

»jâ«, sprâchens alle, »und ist daz der?

»yes«, spoke-they all, »and is that he?

ist daz der hœfsche koufman,

is that the courtly merchant,

4055

von dem uns sîn sun Tristan

of whom to-us his son Tristan

sô manege tugende hât geseit?

so many virtues has told?

wir haben von sîner frumekeit

we have of his valor

mære unde mære vil vernomen.

tidings and tidings much heard.

wie ist er alsus ze hove komen?»

how is he thus to court come?»

4060

und spelleten sus unde sô.

and talked thus and so.

der guote künec der hiez in dô

the good king he bade him then

füeren ze kemenâten

lead to chamber

und hiez in dâ berâten

and bade him there provide

4065 mit rîlicher wæte.

with rich clothing.

Tristan in schiere hæte

Tristan him soon had

schône gebadet und wol gekleit.

beautifully bathed and well clothed.

ein hûetelîn was dâ bereit:

a little-hat was there ready:

ûf sîn houbet sazte er daz,

on his head set he that,

4070 und gestuont ouch daz nie manne baz,

and suited also that never man better,

wan er was under ougen rîch;

for he was under eyes rich;

sîn geschepfede diu was hêrlîch.

his build it was lordly.

Tristan der nam in an die hant

Tristan he took him by the hand

liepliche, als ez im was gewant,

lovingly, as it to-him was turned,

4075 und fuorte in wider ze Marke.

and led him back to Mark.

nu begunde er in dô starke

now began he them then strongly

und sêre wol gevallen.

and sorely well please.

si sprâchen under in allen:

they spoke among them all:

»nu kieset, wie schiere edeliu wât

»now perceive, how soon noble clothing

den man ze lobe gestellet hât!

the man to praise set has!

4080

diu kleider stânt dem koufman

the clothes stand to-the merchant

wol unde lobelîchen an.

well and praiseworthy on.

ouch ist er selbe hêrlîch.

also is he himself lordly.

wer weiz, ern sî vil tugenderîch:

who knows, but-that-he be very virtue-rich:

er gebâret diu gelîche wol,

he bears-himself for-that alike well,

4085

ob man der wârheit jehen sol.

if one the truth say shall.

nu sehet, wie hêrlîche er gât,

now see, how lordly he goes,

wie schœne gebærde er hât

how fair bearing he has

in edelem gewande,

in noble clothing,

und niwan an Tristande

and only in Tristan

4090

dâ kieset sîne tugende an:

there perceive his virtues on:

wie kunde ein werbender man

how could a trading man

sîn kint sô schône erzogen hân,

his child so beautifully raised have,

ezn müeze ûz edelem herzen gân?«

unless-it must from noble heart go?»

Rual's Tale

XXVIII

Mark has Tristan serve Rual at table, then asks about his journey. Rual reveals that Tristan is not his son but his lord, and at Mark's urging tells the whole story: Riwalin's love for Blanscheflur, their marriage, and both their deaths. The king and the court weep as he tells how he hid the child, named him, educated him, and lost him. Tristan alone cannot weep, the tale coming on him too suddenly; his grief is that he has lost a father in Rual.

- 4095 Nu hete man wazzer genomen,
Now had one water taken,
und was der künec ze tische komen.
and was the king to table come.
sînen gast Rûâlen sazte er sâ
his guest Rual set he at-once
ze sînem tische und hiez im dâ
at his table and bade to-him there
hovelîche dienen unde wol
courtly serve and well
4100 als man dem höfschen dienen sol.
as one to-the courtly serve shall.
»Tristan«, sprach er, »gâ balde dar,
»Tristan«, spoke he, »go quickly thither,
nim selbe dînes vater war.«
take self of-thy father heed.«
deiswâr, ich weiz wol, daz geschach:
truly, I know well, that happened:
elliu diu êre und daz gemach,
all the honor and the comfort,
4105 daz er ime erbieten kunde,
which he to-him offer could,
daz tete er, als erm gunde.
that did he, as he-him granted.

ouch az Rûal der guote
also ate Rual the good

mit willeclîchem muote,
with willing spirit,

wan Tristan tete in fröudehaft.
for Tristan made him joyful.

Tristan der was sîn wirtschafft;
Tristan he was his feast;

4110

daz er Tristanden ane sach,
that he Tristan at looked,

daz was sîn meiste gemach.
that was his greatest comfort.

und als man dô von tische gie,
and when one then from table went,

der künec den gast mit rede bevie
the king the guest with speech engaged

und frâgete in aller hande
and asked him of-all kinds

4115

beidiu von sînem lande
both of his land

und ouch umbe sîne vart.
and also about his journey.

und alse er in frâgende wart,
and as he him asking became,

diu ritterschafft loset elliu dar
the knighthood listens all thither

und nam Rûâles mære war.
and took of-Rual's tidings heed.

4120

»Hêrre«, sprach er, »ez ist vür wâr
»Lord«, spoke he, »it is for true

vil nâch wol vierdehalp jâr,
very nearly well three-and-a-half years,

sît des, daz ich von lande schiet;
since that, that I from land departed;

- und swar ich sider hin geriet,
and wherever I since thither came,
- 4125 dane frâgte ich keines mæres nie,
there asked I of-any tidings never,
- wan des, dâ mite ich umbe gie
except of-that, there with I about went
- und daz mich her geleitet hât.«
and which me hither led has.»
- »waz was daz?« »Tristan, der hie stât.
»what was that?« »Tristan, who here stands.
- und zwære, hêrre, ich hân noch kint,
and truly, lord, I have still children,
- 4130 diu mîn von gotes halben sint,
who mine from God's side are,
- und gan den guotes alse wol,
and grant them of-good as well,
- als kein man sînen kinden sol:
as any man to-bis children shall:
- drî süne, wære ich gewesen bî in,
three sons, had I been with them,
- daz eteslîcher under in drin
that one among them three
- 4135 iezuo wol ritter wære;
now well knight would-be;
- hæte ich die halben swære
bad I the half grief
- erliten durch si alle drî,
suffered for them all three,
- swie fremede sô mir Tristan sî,
however strange so to-me Tristan be,
- die ich durch in erliten hân,
which I for him suffered have,
- 4140 es wære vil und vil getân.«
it would-be much and much done.»

»fremede?« sprach der künic dô,
»strange?« spoke the king then,

»saget an, wie ist disem mære sô?
»say on, how is with-this tale so?

er ist iuwer sun doch, alse er giht?«
he is your son yet, as he says?«

»nein, hêrre, er bestât mich niht,
»no, lord, he is-kin-to me not,

wan alse vil: ich bin sîn man.«
except as much: I am his vassal.«

Tristan erschrac und sach in an.
Tristan was-startled and looked him at.

aber sprach der künec: »nu saget uns daz,
again spoke the king: »now tell us that,

durch welhe schulde und umbe waz
for what cause and for what

habet ir die nôt durch in erliten,
have you the distress for him suffered,

iuwer wîp und iuwer kint vermiten,
your wife and your children forgone,

als ir dâ jehet, sô lange frist,
as you there say, so long time,

sît daz er iuwer sun niht ist?«
since that he your son not is?«

»hêrre, daz weiz got und ich.«
»lord, that knows God and I.«

»nu, friunt, bewîset ouch mich,«
»now, friend, instruct also me,«

sprach aber der guote Marke,
spoke again the good Mark,

»es wundert mich starke.«
»it wonders me strongly.«

»weste ich«, sprach der getriuwe,
»knew I, spoke the faithful-one,

4145

4150

4155

»ob ez mich niht geriuwe
whether it me not should-rue

und obe ez mir hie wære
and whether it to-me here were

4160 ze sagene gebære,
to tell fitting,

hêrre, ich möhte iu wunder sagen,
lord, I might to-you wonder tell,

wie sich diz dinc hât her getragen
how itself this thing has hither borne

und wie ez sich gefüege hât
and how it itself arranged has

umbe Tristanden, der hie stât.«
about Tristan, who here stands.»

4165 und al diu massenîe,
and all the household,

Marke und sîn barunîe,
Mark and his baronage,

die bâten an der stunde
they asked at the hour

alle alse ûz einem munde:
all as from one mouth:

»saget an, sæliger man,
tell on, blessed man,

4170 getriuwer man, wer ist Tristan?«
faithful man, who is Tristan?«

Der guote Rûal der sprach dô:
The good Rual he spoke then:

»hêrre, ez kam hie vor alsô,
lord, it came here before so,

als ir wol wizzet unde die,
as you well know and those,

die bî den zîten wâren hie,
who at the times were here,

- daz mîn hêrre Riwalîn, 4175
that my lord Riwalîn,
- des man ich was und solte sîn,
whose vassal I was and should be,
- ob ez got alsô wolte,
if it God so would,
- daz er noch leben solte,
that he still live should,
- dem wart von iuwer frumekeit
to-him was of your valor
- sô vil und alsô vil geseit, 4180
so much and so much told,
- daz er mir sîn liut und sîn lant
that he to-me his people and his land
- allez bevalch in mîne hant.
all commended into my band.
- sus kam er her ze lande,
thus came he hither to land,
- wan er iuch gerne erkande,
for he you gladly knew,
- und wart ingesinde hie. 4185
and became household here.
- sô wizzet ir wol, wie ez ergie
so know you well, how it went
- umbe die âventiure
about the adventure
- der schœnen Blanschefliure,
of-the fair Blanscheflur,
- wie er die ze friunt gewan
how he her as lover gained
- und sî mit ime von hinne entran. 4190
and she with him from hence fled.
- nu sî dô heim kâmen,
now they then home came,

ein ander zê genâmen,

each other to-marriage took,

in mînem hûse daz geschach,

in my house that happened,

daz ichz und manic man gesach,

that I-it and many-a man saw,

4195 do bevalch er mirs in mîne pflege:

then commended he to-me-her into my care:

sît her pflac ich ir alle wege,

since then took-care-of I of-her all ways,

so ich iemer beste kunde.

as I ever best could.

zehant und an der stunde

at-once and at the hour

warb er unde besande

arranged he and summoned

4200 eine reise in sînem lande

a campaign in his land

mit mâgen und mit mannen

with kinsmen and with vassals

und fuor ouch iesâ dannen

and went also at-once thence

und wart in eime strîte erslagen,

and was in a battle slain,

als ir wol habet gehœret sagen.

as you well have heard say.

4205 und als daz mære vür kam

and when the tidings forth came

und diu vil schœne vernam,

and the very fair-one heard,

wie ez gevaren wære,

how it fared had,

diu tôtliche swære

the deathly grief

sô sêre ir in ir herze sluoc,

so sorely to-her into her heart struck,

Tristan hie stât, den sî dô truoc,

Tristan here stands, whom she then bore,

4210

daz sî den von der nôt gewan,

that she him from the distress brought-forth,

und lac si selbe tôt dervan.«

and lay she self dead thereof:«

hie mite gie den getriuwen man

here with went the faithful man

als inneclicher jâmer an,

so inward misery on,

als er ez wol bescheinete,

as he it well showed,

4215

wande er saz unde weinete,

for he sat and wept,

als obe er ein kint wære.

as if he a child were.

ouch begunde von dem mære

also began from the tidings

den anderen allen

to-the others all

ir ougen überwallen.

their eyes overflow.

4220

der guote künic Marke

the good king Mark

dem gieng ez alsô starke

to-him went it so strongly

mit jâmer in sîn herze,

with misery into his heart,

daz ime der herzesmerze

that to-him the heart-pain

4225 mit trehenen ûz den ougen flôz

with tears out-of the eyes flowed

und ime wange unde wât begôz.

and to-him cheek and clothing drenched.

Tristande was daz mære

to-Tristan was the tidings

vil inneclîche swære

very inwardly heavy

von anders nihte wan von dan,

from other nothing than from that,

4230 daz er an dem getriuwen man

that he in the faithful man

vater unde vaterwân

father and father-belief

alsô verloren solte hân.

so lost should have.

Sus saz Rûal der guote

Thus sat Rual the good

mit trûreclîchem muote

with sad spirit

4235 und seite dem gesinde

and told the household

von dem vil armen kinde,

of the very poor child,

wie starke er des hiez nemen war,

how strongly he of-it bade take heed,

dô ez diu muoter gebar.

when it the mother bore.

wie erz an tougenlîcher stat

how he-it in secret place

4240 verbergen unde verhelen bat;

bide and conceal bade;

wie er ze mære werden liez,

how he to tidings become let,

den lantliuten sagen hiez,

to-the land-people say bade,

ez wære in sîner muoter tôt;

it were in its mother dead;

wie er sînem wîbe gebôt,

how he to-his wife commanded,

alse ich iu ê seite,

as I to-you before told,

daz sî sich in leite,

that she herself in laid,

als ein wîp kindes inne lit,

as a woman of-child within lies,

und daz si nâch der selben zît

and that she after the same time

der werlde jehende wære,

to-the world declaring were,

daz sî daz kint gebære;

that she the child should-bear;

wie sî mit ime ze kirchen gie,

how she with it to church went,

und wie er dâ die toufe enphie;

and how he there the baptism received;

war umbe er Tristan wart genant;

what for he Tristan was named;

wie er in sante in fremediu lant,

how he him sent into foreign lands,

und swaz er fuoge kunde

and whatever he skill knew

mit handen und mit munde,

with hands and with mouth,

wie er in daz lêren hiez,

how he him that teach bade,

4245

4250

4255

wie er in in dem schiffe liez,

how he him in the ship left,

und wie er ime dâ wart genomen,

and how he to-him there was taken,

4260 und wie er nâch im dar was komen

and how he after him thither was come

mit maneger arbeite.

with many-a hardship.

sus saz er unde seite

thus sat he and told

diz mære gâr von ende her.

this tale wholly from end hither.

daz weinde Marke, daz weinde er,

that wept Mark, that wept he,

4265 daz weindens al gemeine

that wept-they all together

niwan Tristan al eine;

except Tristan all alone;

dern mohte es niht beklagen,

he could it not lament,

swes er dâ gehôrte sagen;

whatever he there heard say;

in kam diu rede ze gâhes an.

to-him came the speech too suddenly on.

4270 swaz aber Rûal der guote man

whatever however Rual the good man

dem gesinde erbermekeite

to-the household of-pitifulness

von den gelieben seite,

of the beloved-ones told,

Kanêle und Blanscheffiure:

Kanel and Blanscheflur:

elliu diu âventiure

all the adventure

diu was hie wider kleine

it was here against small

4275

niwan diu triuwe al eine,

only the faithfulness all alone,

die er nâch tôde an ime begie,

whiche he after death on him performed,

als ir wol habet gehœret wie,

as you well have heard how,

an ir beider kinde:

in their of-both child:

daz was dem ingesinde

that was to-the household

4280

diu meiste triuwe, die kein man

the greatest faithfulness, which any man

ze sîner hêrschefte ie gewan.

to his lordship ever gained.

The Ring

XXIX

Rual gives Mark a ring as proof of his story, and Mark recognizes it as the ring he gave his sister. He embraces Tristan as his heir and welcomes Rual, whose loyalty he knows by report, and the court salutes him. Tristan laments that he has lost two fathers, but Rual reminds him he now has two and urges him to ask Mark to knight him. Tristan answers that he would gladly be knighted if he had wealth enough to honor it, and Mark promises him Parmenie and all Cornwall's wealth.

Nu disiū rede alsus geschach,

Now this speech thus happened,

Marke zuo dem gaste sprach

Mark to the guest spoke

4285 »nu hêrre, ist diser rede alsô?«

»now lord, is of-this speech so?«

Rûal der guote bôt im dô

Rual the good offered to-him then

ein vingerlîn an sîne hant:

a ring onto his hand:

»nu hêrre«, sprach er, »sît gemant

»now lord«, spoke he, »be reminded

mîner rede und mîner mære.«

of-my speech and of-my tidings.«

4290 der guote und der gewære

the good and the true

Marke nam ez und sach ez an.

Mark took it and looked it at.

der jâmer, den er dô gewan,

the misery, which he then gained,

der wart aber dô vester.

it became again then firmer.

»â,« sprach er, »süeziu swester,

»ah,« spoke he, »sweet sister,

- diz vingerlîn daz gab ich dir, 4295
this ring that gave I thee,
- und mîn vater der gab ez mir,
and my father he gave it me,
- dô er an sînem tôde lac.
when he on his death lay.
- disem mære ich wol gelouben mac.
this tale I well believe may.
- Tristan, gâ her und küsse mich!
Tristan, go here and kiss me!
- und zwâre, soltu leben und ich, 4300
and truly, (if)-shalt-thou live and I,
- ich wil dîn erbevater sîn.
I will thy heir-father be.
- Blanschefliure, der muoter dîn,
Blanscheflur, the mother thine,
- und dînem vater Kanêle,
and thy father Kanel,
- den genâde got zer sêle
to-them be-gracious God to-the soul
- und geruoche in beiden samet geben 4305
and deign to-them both together give
- daz êweclîche lebende leben.
the eternally living life.
- sît ez alsus gevaren ist,
since it thus fared is,
- daz doch dû mir worden bist
that yet thou to-me become art
- von der vil lieben swester mîn,
from the very dear sister mine,
- geruochet es mîn trehtîn, 4310
(if)-deigns it my Lord,
- sô wil ich iemer wesen frô.«
so will I ever be glad.»

ze dem gaste sprach er aber dô:

to the guest spoke he again then:

»nu, lieber friunt, nu saget mir,

»now, dear friend, now tell me,

wer sît ir oder wie heizet ir?»

who are you or how are-called you?»

4315 »Rûal, hêrre.« »Rûal?» »jâ.«

»Rual, lord.« »Rual?» »yes.«

hie mite versan sich Marke sâ,

here with betbought himself Mark at-once,

wan er ouch hete in sînen tagen

for he also had in his days

vil von ime gehæret sagen,

much of him heard say,

wie wîse und wie êrbære

how wise and how honorable

4320 und wie getriuwe er wære,

and how faithful he were,

und sprach: »Rûal li foitenant?»

and spoke: »Rual the lieutenant?»

»jâ hêrre, alsô bin ich genant.«

»yes lord, so am I named.«

und gie der guote Marke hin

and went the good Mark thither

und kuste in unde enpfienç in

and kissed him and received him

4325 hêrlîche und alse im wol gezam.

lordly and as to-him well befitted.

diu hêrschaft al zehant dô kam

the lordship all at-once then came

und kusten in besunder.

and kissed him apart.

si begunden in ze wunder

they began him to-a wonder

mit armen enbrazieren,

with arms embrace,

höfſchliche ſalûieren:

courteously salute:

4330

»willekomen, Rûal der werde,

»welcome, Rual the worthy,

ein wunder ûf der erde!«

a wonder on the earth!«

Rûal was dâ willekomen.

Rual was there welcome.

nu hete ouch in der kûnec genomen

now had also him the king taken

an ſîne hant und leite in hin.

by his hand and led him thither.

4335

vil lieplîche ſazte er in

very lovingly set he him

ze ſich an ſîne ſîten nider,

to himself at his side down,

und griffen an ir mære wider

and gripped on their tale again

und redeten aller hande

and talked of-all kinds

beidiu von Tristande

both of Tristan

4340

und ouch von Blanchefflure

and also of Blancheflur

alle die âventiure,

all the adventure,

waz Kanêl unde Morgân

what Kanel and Morgan

ein ander hæten getân,

each other had done,

4345 und wie daz ouch ein ende nam.
and how that also an end took.

vil schiere ez an daz mære kam,
very soon it to the tale came,

daz der künec Rûâle seite,
that the king to-Rual told,

mit welher kündekeite
with what cleverness

Tristan dar komen wære,
Tristan thither come were,

4350 und wie er seite mære,
and how he told tidings,

sîn vater der wære ein koufman.
his father he were a merchant.

Rûal der sach Tristanden an:
Rual he looked Tristan at:

»friunt,« sprach er, »ich hân lange
»friend,« spoke he, »I have long

vil anclîch und vil ange
very anxiously and very sorely

4355 mîne marschandîse
my merchandise

in armeclîcher wîse
in poor manner

durch dînen willen her getriben;
for thy sake hither driven;

deist aber allez nû beliben
that-is however all now remained

an einem guoten ende.
at a good end.

4360 dar umbe ich mîne hende
there for I my hands

iemer ze gote bieten sol.«
ever to God offer shall.»

Tristan sprach: »ich høre wol,
Tristan spoke: »I hear well,
 sich machent disiu mære alsô,
themselves make these tidings so,
 daz ich ir spâte wurde frô.
that I of-them late become glad.
 ich bin, alse ich hân vernomen,
I am, as I have heard,
 ze wunderlîchen mæren komen:
to wondrous tidings come:
 ich høre mînen vater sagen,
I hear my father say,
 mîn vater der sî lange erslagen.
my father be be long slain.
 hie mite verzîhet er sich mîn,
here with renounces he himself of-me,
 sus muoz ich âne vater sîn,
thus must I without father be,
 zweier veter, die ich gewonnen hân.
of-two fathers, whom I gained have.
 â, vater unde vaterwân,
ah, father and father-belief,
 wie sît ir mir alsus benomen!
how are you from-me thus taken!
 an den ich jach, mir wære komen
in whom I declared, to-me were come
 ein vater, an dem selben man
a father, in the same man
 da verliuse ich zwêne vetere an,
there lose I two fathers in,
 in unde den ich nie gesach.«
him and whom I never saw.»
 der guote marschalc aber dô sprach:
the good marshal again then spoke:

4365

4370

4375

»wie nû, geselle Tristan,

»how now, companion Tristan,

4380 lâ dise rede, dân ist niht an.

let this speech, there is nothing in.

jâ bistu von der künfte mîn

yes art-thou from the coming mine

werder, dan du wândest sîn,

worthier, than thou thoughtest be,

und bist ir gêret iemer mê

and art of-it honored ever more

und hâst doch zwêne veter als ê,

and hast yet two fathers as before,

4385 hie mînen hêrren unde mich:

here my lord and me:

er ist dîn vater, alsô bin ich.

he is thy father, so am I.

volge et mîner lêre

follow just my teaching

und wis iemer mêre

and be ever more

allen künegen ebenhêr.

to-all kings equal.

4390 lâz alle rede und tuo niht mêr.

let all speech and do nothing more.

mînen hêrren, dînen œheim,

my lord, thy uncle,

den bit, daz er dir helfe heim

him ask, that he thee help home

und dich hie ritter mache,

and thee here knight make,

wan dû maht dîner sache

for thou canst of-thy matter

4395 sus hin wol selbe nemen war.

thus forth well self take heed.

ir hêren, sprechet alle dar,
you lords, speak all thither,

daz ez mîn hêre gerne tuo!«
that it my lord gladly do!»

sus sprâchens alle samt derzuo:
thus spoke-they all together there-to:

»hêre, ez hât guote fuoge:
»lord, it has good fitness:

Tristan hât kraft genuoge
Tristan has strength enough

4400

und ist ein wol gewahsen man.«
and is a well grown man.»

der künec sprach: »neve Tristan,
the king spoke: »nephew Tristan,

sage an, wie stât dîn muot hie zuo?
tell on, how stands thy spirit here to?

ist ez dir liep, daz ich ez tuo?«
is it to-thee dear, that I it do?»

»trût hêre, ich sage iu mînen muot;
»dear lord, I tell you my spirit;

4405

hæte ich sô rîlichez guot,
had I so rich goods,

daz ich wol nâch dem willen mîn
that I well after the will mine

und alsô ritter möhte sîn,
and so knight could be,

daz ich mich ritterlîches namen
that I myself of-the-knightly name

noch er sich mîn niht dörfte schamen,
nor it itself of-me not needed shame,

4410

und ritterlîchiu werdekeit
and knightly worthiness

an mir niht würde nider geleit,
in me not should-become down laid,

sô wolte ich gerne ritter sîn,
so would I gladly knight be,

die müezigen jugende mîn
the idle youth mine

4415 üeben unde kêren
exercise and turn

ze werltlichen êren;
to worldly honors;

wan ritterschaft, alsô man seit,
for knighthood, as one says,

diu muoz ie von der kintheit
it must ever from the childhood

nemen ir anegenge
take its beginning

4420 oder sî wirt selten strenge.
or it becomes seldom strong.

daz ich mîn unversuochte jugent
that I my untried youth

ûf werdekeit unde ûf tugent
on worthiness and on virtue

sô rehte selten geüebet hân,
so right seldom exercised have,

daz ist vil sêre missetân
that is very sorely misdone

4425 und hân es an mich selben haz.
and have of-it at me myself hatred.

nu weiz ich doch nu lange daz,
now know I yet now long that,

senfte unde ritterlicher prîs,
ease and knightly prize,

diu missehellent alle wîs
they disagree all ways

und mugen vil übele samet wesen.
and may very ill together be.

ouch hân ich selbe wol gelesen, 4430
also have I self well read,

daz êre wil des lîbes nôt.
that honor wants of-the body distress.

gemach daz ist der êren tôz,
comfort that is of-the honors death,

dâ mans ze lange und ouch ze vil
where one-it too long and also too much

in der kintheite pflegen wil.
in the childhood pursue will.

und wizzet wol zewâre, 4435
and know well truly,

hæte ich vor einem jâre
had I before a year

oder ê mîn dinc sô wol gewist,
or earlier my matter so well known,

als ez mir hie gesaget ist,
as it to-me here told is,

ez enwære niht biz her gespart.
it would-be not until now spared.

sît ez aber dô gesûmet wart, 4440
since it however then neglected was,

so ist reht, daz ich mich noch erhol,
so is right, that I myself yet recover,

wan mîn dinc stât billîche wol
for my matter stands fittingly well

an lîbe und an dem muote.
in body and in the spirit.

got râte mir zem guote,
God counsel me to-the good,

daz ich dem muote vollevar!« 4445
that I the spirit fulfill!«

Marke sprach: »neve, nim selbe war,
Mark spoke: »nephew, take self heed,

sich, wie du werben woltest,
see, how thou act wouldst,

ob du künic wesen soltest
if thou king be shouldst

und hêrre über allez Kurnewal.
and lord over all Cornwall.

4450 sô sitzet hie dîn vater Rûal,
so sits here thy father Rual,

der ganze triuwe zuo dir hât,
who whole faithfulness toward thee has,

der sî dîn râtgebe und dîn rât,
he be thy counsel-giver and thy counsel,

daz dîn dinc alsô vollegê,
that thy matter so succeed,

daz ez nâch dînem willen stê.
that it after thy will stand.

4455 vil lieber neve Tristan,
very dear nephew Tristan,

nim dich niht armuotes an;
take thyself not of-poverty on;

wan Parmenîe daz ist dîn
for Parmenie that is thine

und muoz dîn eigen iemer sîn,
and must thy own ever be,

sol ich und dîn vater Rûal leben.
(if)-shall I and thy father Rual live.

4460 dar zuo wil ich dir stiure geben:
there to will I thee support give:

mîn lant, mîn liut und swaz ich hân,
my land, my people and whatever I have,

trût neve, daz sî dir ûf getân.
dear nephew, that be to-thee up opened.

wil dû dîn herze kêren

(if)-wilt thou thy heart turn

ze vorderlîchen êren

to preeminent honors

und ist dîn wille alsô getân,

and (if)-is thy will so made,

als ich von dir vernomen hân,

as I from thee heard have,

sone spar des mînen niht dervor:

so spare of-the mine not therefrom:

Kurnewal daz sî dîn urbor,

Cornwall that be thy revenue,

mîn krône sî dîn zinsærîn.

my crown be thy tributary.

wiltû zer werlde gewerdet sîn,

(if)-wilt-thou in-the world ennobled be,

sô schaffe umbe rîchen muot,

so strive for rich spirit,

ich gibe dir rîchlîchez guot.

I give thee rich goods.

sich, dû hâst keiserlîche habe,

see, thou hast imperial possessions,

nune ganc dir selber nihtes abe.

now go thee self of-nothing off.

bistû dir selbem alsô holt

(if)-art-thou to-thee self so devoted

und hâstu muot, als du solt

and (if)-hast-thou spirit, as thou shalt

unde als dû mir hâst verjehen,

and as thou to-me hast declared,

daz hân ich schiere an dir gesehen.

that have I soon in thee seen.

sich, vinde ich hêrren muot an dir,

see, (if)-find I lord's spirit in thee,

4465

4470

4475

4480 du vindest iemer mêre an mir
thou findest ever more in me

dînes willen vollen schrîn:
of-thy will full sbrine:

Tintajoël muoz iemer sîn
Tintajoel must ever be

dîn triscamere und dîn trisor.
thy treasure-chamber and thy treasury.

gesprengestû mir rehte vor
(if)-spurrest-thou to-me rightly before

4485 mit rîlichem muote,
with rich spirit,

volge ich dir niht mit guote,
(if)-follow I thee not with goods,

sô müeze mir allez daz zegân,
so may to-me all that perish,

daz ich ze Kurnewâle hân.«
which I in Cornwall have.»

The Companions' Clothing

XXX

The court praises Mark's words. Rual and Tristan agree so well that neither advises anything the other would not want, and they prepare armor and clothing for thirty companions within thirty days. The poet says that their clothes were made by four powers: high spirit, full wealth, discretion, and courtly sense. He does not know how to describe Tristan's knightng, since so much has been said already about knightly splendor that he can add nothing to delight a heart.

Hie wart genigen rîche:
Here was bowed richly:

4490 si nigen al gelîche,
they bowed all alike,

die bî dem mære wâren.

who at the tale were.

si buten im unde bâren

they offered him and bore

êre unde lop mit schalle.

honor and praise with clamor.

»kûnec Marke«, sprâchens alle,

»king Mark«, spoke-they all,

»du sprichest, als der hœfsche sol:

»thou speakest, as the courtly shall:

4495

diu wort gezement der krône wol.

the words befit the crown well.

dîn zunge, dîn herze und dîn hant

thy tongue, thy heart and thy hand

die gebieten iemer über diz lant!

they command ever over this land!

wis iemer kûnec über Kurnewal!«

be ever king over Cornwall!«

der getriuwe marschalch dan Rûal

the faithful marshal lord Rual

4500

und sîn junchêre Tristan

and his young-lord Tristan

die griffen ir geschefede an

they gripped their business on

nâch solher rîcheite,

after such richness,

als in der kûnec vûr leite

as to-them the king before laid

und in diu mâze was gegeben.

and to-them the measure was given.

4505

nu strîte ich umbe ir beider leben

now strive I about their of-both life

beidiu des vater und des suns.

both of-the father and of-the son.

wan eteswer der frâget uns

for someone he asks us

durch daz, daz alter unde jugent

because that, that age and youth

4510 selten gehellent einer tugent,

seldom agree in-a virtue,

und jugent daz guot unruochet

and youth the goods disregards

dâ ez daz alter suochet,

where it the age seeks,

wie sî sich under in beiden

how they themselves between them both

ie kunden sô bescheiden,

ever could so settle,

4515 daz ietwederre besunder

that each-of-the-two apart

sîner ger hier under

of-bis desire here under

und sînes rehtes wielte,

and of-bis right should-wield,

sô daz Rûal behielte

so that Rual should-keep

die mâze an dem guote

the measure in the goods

4520 und Tristan sînem muote

and Tristan to-bis spirit

mit vollem guote vollezûge?

with full goods should-fulfill?

diz prûeve ich schiere sunder lûge.

this prove I soon without lie.

Rûal unde Tristan

Rual and Tristan

die truogen beide ein ander an

they bore both each other on

als ebenwilligen muot,

so equal-willed spirit,

daz ir ietwederre übel noch guot

that of-them each-of-the-two ill nor good

weder riet noch râten solte,

neither advised nor advise should,

wan alse der ander wolte.

except as the other would.

Rûal, der tugende erkande,

Rual, who virtues knew,

der geloubete Tristande

he believed Tristan

und sach die jugende an im an;

and saw the youth in him at;

sô entweich aber Tristan

so yielded however Tristan

den tugenden an Rûâle.

to-the virtues in Rual.

diz truoc si zeinem mâle

this bore them to-one mark

und zeinem zil gemeiner ger,

and to-one goal of-common desire,

daz dirre gerte alse der.

that this-one desired as that-one.

alsus sô wârens under in zwein

thus so were-they between them two

mit willen und mit muote al ein.

with will and with spirit all one.

4525

4530

4535

hie von wart alter unde jugent

here from became age and youth

4540 gehellesam an einer tugent;

agreeing in one virtue;

alhie viel hôher muot in sin,

here fell high spirit into sense,

hie mite behieltens under in

here with kept-they between them

Tristan sîn reht an muote,

Tristan his right in spirit,

Rûal die mâze an guote,

Rual the measure in goods,

4545 daz ir ietwederre an der stete

that of-them each-of-the-two at the place

niht wider sînem rehte tete.

not against his right did.

Sus greif Rûal und Tristan

Thus gripped Rual and Tristan

ir dinc bescheidenlîchen an,

their matter discreetly on,

als ez in beiden was gewant.

as it to-them both was turned.

4550 si gewunnen harnasch unde gewant

they gained harness and clothing

innerhalb den drîzec tagen,

within the thirty days,

daz drîzec ritter solten tragen,

which thirty knights should wear,

die sich der hōfsche Tristan

whom himself the courtly Tristan

ze gesellen wolte nemen an.

to companions would take on.

- Swer mich nu frâget umbe ir kleit 4555
Whoever me now asks about their clothes
- und umbe ir kleider rîcheit,
and about their clothes' richness,
- wie diu zesamene wurden brâht,
how they together were brought,
- des bin ich kurze bedâht,
of-that am I shortly considered,
- dem sage ich, als daz mære giht.
to-him tell I, as the tale says.
- sage ich ime anders iht, 4560
(if)-tell I to-him otherwise anything,
- sô widertrîbe er mich dar an
so refute he me there at
- und sage er selbe baz dar van:
and tell he self better there of:
- ir kleider wâren ûf geleit
their clothes were up laid
- mit vier hande rîcheit,
with four kinds richness,
- und was der vierer iegelîch 4565
and was of-the four each-one
- in ir ambete rîch:
in their office rich:
- daz eine daz was hôher muot;
the one that was high spirit;
- daz ander daz was vollez guot;
the second that was full goods;
- daz dritte was bescheidenheit,
the third was discretion,
- diu disiu zwei zesamene sneit; 4570
which these two together cut;
- daz vierde daz was hôfscher sin,
the fourth that was courtly sense,

der næte disen allen drin.

which sewed for-these all three.

si worhten alle viere

they worked all four

vil rehte in ir maniere:

very rightly in their manner:

4575 der hôhe muot der gerte,

the high spirit it desired,

daz volle guot gewerte,

the full goods granted,

bescheidenheit schuof unde sneit;

discretion shaped and cut;

der sin der næte ir aller kleit

the sense it sewed their of-all clothes

und ander ir feitiure,

and other their fittings,

4580 baniere und covertiure

banners and caparisons

und anderen der ritter rât,

and other the knights' provision,

der den ritter bestât.

which the knight befits.

swaz sô daz ros und ouch den man

whatever so the horse and also the man

ze rittere geprüeven kan,

to knight furnish can,

4585 der geziuc was aller sêre rîch,

the gear was altogether sorely rich,

und alsô rîch, daz iegelîch

and so rich, that each

einem kûnege wol gezæme,

to-a king well should-befit,

daz er swert dar inne næme.

that he sword there within should-take.

Sît die gesellen sint bereit
Since the companions are ready
 mit bescheidenlîcher rîcheit, 4590
with discreet richness,
 wie gevâhe ich nû mîn sprechen an,
how begin I now my speaking on,
 daz ich den werden houbetman
that I the worthy captain
 Tristanden sô bereite
Tristan so prepare
 ze sîner swertleite,
for his sword-taking,
 daz man ez gerne verneme 4595
that one it gladly hear
 und an dem mære wol gezeme?
and in the tale well befit?
 ich enweiz, waz ich dâ von gesage,
I know-not, what I there of say,
 daz iu gelîche und iu behage
that to-you like and to-you please
 und schône an disem mære stê.
and fairly in this tale stand.
 wan bî mînen tagen und ê 4600
for by my days and before
 hât man sô rehte wol geseit
has one so right well told
 von werltlîcher zierheit,
of worldly finery,
 von rîchem gerâte,
of rich equipment,
 ob ich der sinne hæte
if I of-the senses had
 zwelve, der ich einen hân, 4605
twelve, of-which I one have,

mit den ich umbe solte gân,
with which I about should go,

und wære daz gefüege,
and were that fitting,

daz ich zwelf zungen trüege
that I twelve tongues should-bear

in mîn eines munde,
in my one mouth,

4610 der iegelichiu kunde
of-which each could

sprechen, alse ich sprechen kan,
speak, as I speak can,

ine wiste, wie gevâhen an,
I-not knew, how begin on,

daz ich von rîcheite
that I of richness

sô guotes iht geseite,
so good anything should-say,

4615 mane hæte baz dâ von geseit.
unless-one had better there of said.

jâ ritterlîchiu zierheit
yes knightly finery

diu ist sô manege wîs beschriben
it is so many ways described

und ist mit rede alsô zetriben,
and is with speech so frayed,

daz ich niht kan gereden dar abe,
that I not can say there of,

4620 dâ von kein herze fröude habe.
there from any heart joy have.

The Poets

XXXI

The poet reviews the German poets. Hartmann of Aue deserves the laurel for his clear, crystal words, while the inventors of wild tales, who need interpreters, do not. Bigger of Steinach weaves words like tapestry. Heinrich of Veldeke grafted the first sprig of German poetry. Among the singers of love, the nightingale of Hagenau is silent now, and the poet names the nightingale of the Vogelweide to lead them, praying that they turn their sorrow to joy.

Hartman der Ouwære,

Hartmann the Auer,

ahî, wie der diu mære

ah, how he the tales

beide ûzen unde innen

both outside and inside

mit worten und mit sinnen

with words and with senses

durchverwet und durchzieret!

through-colors and through-adorns!

4625

wie er mit rede figieret

how he with speech fashions

der âventiure meine!

of-the adventure meaning!

wie lûter und wie reine

how clear and how pure

sîne kristallînen wortelîn

his crystalline little-words

beidiu sint und iemer müezen sîn!

both are and ever must be!

4630

si koment den man mit siten an,

they come the man with manners at,

si tuont sich nâhe zuo dem man
they make themselves near to the man

und liebent rehtem muote.
and please right spirit.

swer guote rede ze guote
whoever good speech to good

4635 und ouch ze rehte kan verstân,
and also to right can understand,

der muoz dem Ouwære lân
he must to-the Auer leave

sîn schapel unde sîn lôrzwi.
his chaplet and his laurel-twigg

swer nû des hasen geselle sî
whoever now of-the hare companion be

und ûf der wortheide
and on the word-beath

4640 hôchsprünge und wîtweide
high-leaps and far-grazing

mit bickelworten welle sîn
with dice-words want be

und ûf daz lôrschapelekîn
and on the laurel-little-chaplet

wân âne volge welle hân,
belief without following want have,

der lâze uns bî dem wâne stân,
he let us by the belief stand,

4645 wir wellen an der kûr ouch wesen.
we want at the choice also be.

wir, die die bluomen helfen lesen,
we, who the flowers help gather,

mit den daz selbe loberîs
with which the same praise-sprig

underflohten ist in bluomen wîs,
interwoven is in flowers' way,

wir wellen wizzen, wes er ger:

we want know, what he desire:

wan swer es ger, der springe her

for whoever it desire, he spring here

4650

und stecke sîne bluomen dar.

and stick his flowers there.

sô nemen wir an den bluomen war,

so take we of the flowers heed,

ob sî sô wol dar an gezemen,

whether they so well there on befit,

daz wirz dem Ouwære nemen

that we-it from-the Auer take

und geben ime daz lôrzwi.

and give him the laurel-twigg.

4655

sît aber noch nieman komen sî,

since however yet no-one come be,

der ez billicher süle hân,

who it more-fittingly shall have,

sô helfe iu got, sô lâzen stân:

so help you God, so let stand:

wir ensuln ez nieman lâzen tragen,

we shall it no-one let wear,

sîniu wort ensîn vil wol getwagen,

his words unless-be very well wasbed,

4660

sîn rede ensî ebene unde sleht,

his speech unless-be even and smooth,

ob ieman schône unde ûfreht

if anyone beautifully and upright

mit ebenen sinnen dar getrabe,

with even senses there trot,

daz er dar über iht besnabe.

that he there over at-all stumble.

vindære wilder mære,

inventors of-wild tales,

4665

der mære wilderære,

of-the tales wild-hunters,

die mit den ketenen liegent

who with the chains lie

und stumpfe sinne triegent,

and dull senses deceive,

die golt von swachen sachen

who gold from base things

4670 den kinden kunnen machen

for-the children can make

und ûz der bûhsen giezen

and out-of the box pour

stoubine mergriezen:

dusty pearls:

die bernt uns mit dem stocke schate,

they bear us with the stick shade,

niht mit dem grünen meienblate,

not with the green May-leaf,

4675 mit zwîgen noch mit esten.

with twigs nor with branches.

ir schate der tuot den gesten

their shade it does to-the guests

vil selten in den ougen wol.

very seldom in the eyes well.

ob man der wârheit jehen sol,

if one the truth say shall,

dane gât niht guotes muotes van,

there goes not of-good spirit from-it,

4680 dane lît niht herzelustes an:

there lies not of-heart's-pleasure in:

ir rede ist niht alsô gevar,

their speech is not so colored,

daz edele herze iht lache dar.

that noble heart at-all laugh there.

die selben wilderære

the same wild-hunters

si müezen tiutære

they must interpreters

mit ir mære lâzen gân:

with their tales let go:

4685

wirn mugen ir dâ nâch niht verstân,

we can them there after not understand,

als man si hœret unde siht;

as one them hears and sees;

sone hân wir ouch der muoze niht,

so have we also the leisure not,

daz wir die glôse suoehen

that we the gloss seek

in den swarzen buochen.

in the black books.

4690

 Noch ist der verwære mêt:

Still is of-the dyers more:

von Steinahe Blikêt,

of Steinach Bigger,

diu sîniu wort sint lussam.

the his words are lovely.

si worhten vrouwen an der ram

them worked ladies on the frame

von golde und ouch von sîden,

of gold and also of silk,

4695

man möhtes undersnîden

one might-them trim

mit kriecheschen borten.

with Greek borders.

er hât den wunsch von worten:

he has the wish of words:

sînen sin den reinen,

his sense the pure,

- 4700 ich wæne, daz in feinen
I think, that it fairies
 ze wundere haben gespunnen
to wonder have spun
 und haben in in ir brunnen
and have it in their spring
 geliutert unde gereinet:
refined and purified:
 er ist binamen gefeinet.
he is truly fairy-gifted.
- 4705 sîn zunge, diu die harphe treit
his tongue, which the harp bears
 diu hât zwô volle sælekeit:
it has two full blessedness:
 daz sint diu wort, daz ist der sin.
that are the words, that is the sense.
 diu zwei diu harphent under in
the two they harp between them
 ir mære in fremedem prîse.
their tale in strange prize.
- 4710 der selbe wortwîse,
the same word-wise-one,
 nemet war, wie der hier under
take heed, how he here under
 an dem umbehangen wunder
on the tapestry wonder
 mit spæher rede entwîrfet;
with skilled speech sketches;
 wie er die mezzel wirfet
how he the knives throws
- 4715 mit behendeclîchen rîmen.
with deft rhymes.
 wie kan er rîme lîmen,
how can he rhymes glue,

als ob si dâ gewahsen sîn!

as if they there grown be!

ez ist noch der geloube mîn,

it is still the belief mine,

daz er buoch und buochstabe

that he book and letters

vür vedern an gebunden habe;

for feathers on bound have;

4720

wan, wellet ir sîn nemen war,

for, (if)-want you of-him take heed,

sîniu wort diu sweiment alse der ar.

his words they soar like the eagle.

Wen mag ich nû mêr ûz gelesen?

Whom may I now more out choose?

ir ist und ist genuoc gewesen

of-them is and is enough been

vil sinnec und vil rederîch.

very wise and very eloquent.

4725

von Veldeken Heinrîch

of Veldeke Heinrich

der sprach ûz vollen sinnen.

he spoke from full senses.

wie wol sang er von minnen!

how well sang he of love!

wie schône er sînen sin besneit!

how beautifully he his sense cut!

ich wæne, er sîne wîsheit

I think, he his wisdom

4730

ûz Pegases ursprunge nam,

from Pegasus's spring took,

von dem diu wîsheit elliū kam.

from which the wisdom all came.

ine hân sîn selbe niht gesehen,

I have him self not seen,

nu hœre ich aber die besten jehen,
now hear I however the best say,

4735 die, die bî sînen jâren
those, who in his years

und sît her meister wâren,
and since then masters were,

die selben gebent im einen prîs,
the same give him a prize,

er inpfete daz êrste rîs
he grafted the first sprig

in tiutscher zungen:
in German tongue:

4740 dâ von sît este ersprungen,
there from since branches sprang,

von den die bluomen kâmen,
from which the flowers came,

dâ sî die spâche ûz nâmen
where they the skill out took

der meisterlîchen fûnde;
of-the masterly inventions;

und ist diu selbe kûnde
and is the same art

4745 sô wîten gebreitet,
so widely spread,

sô manege wîs zeleit,et,
so many ways divided,

daz alle, die nu sprechent,
that all, who now speak,

daz die den wunsch dâ brechent
that they the wish there pick

von bluomen und von rîsen
of flowers and of sprigs

4750 an worten unde an wîsen.
in words and in melodies.

Der nahtegalen der ist vil,
Of-the nightingales of-them is many,
 von den ich nû niht sprechen wil:
of whom I now not speak will:
 sine hœrent niht ze dirre schar.
they belong not to this company.
 durch daz sprich ich niht anders dar,
for that speak I nothing other there,
 wan daz ich iemer sprechen sol:
except what I ever speak shall:
 sî kunnen alle ir ambet wol
they know all their office well
 und singent wol ze prîse
and sing well to prize
 ir sûeze sumerwîse;
their sweet summer-melodies;
 ir stimme ist lûter unde guot,
their voice is clear and good,
 si gebent der werlde hōhen muot
they give to-the world high spirit
 und tuont reht in dem herzen wol.
and do right in the heart well.
 diu werlt diu wære unruoches vol
the world it would-be of-indifference full
 und lebete rehte als âne ir danc,
and would-live just as without its thanks,
 wan der vil liebe vogelsanc
except the very dear birdsong
 der ermant vil dicke den man,
it reminds very often the man,
 der ie ze liebe muot gewan,
who ever to love spirit gained,

4755

4760

4765

beide liebes unde guotes

both of-love and of-good

und maneger hande muotes,

and of-many kind spirit,

der edelem herzen sanfte tuot;

which to-noble heart softly does;

4770 ez wecket friuntlîchen muot.

it wakes friendly spirit.

hie von kumt inneclîch gedanc,

here from comes inward thought,

sô der vil liebe vogelsanc

when the very dear birdsong

der werlde ir liep beginnet zalen.

to-the world its joy begins tell.

nu sprechen umb die nahtegalen!

now speak about the nightingales!

4775 die sint ir dinges wol bereit

they are of-their matter well ready

und kunnen alle ir senede leit

and can all their yearning sorrow

sô wol besingen unde besagen.

so well sing and tell.

welhiu sol ir baniere tragen,

which shall their banner bear;

sît diu von Hagenouwe,

since she of Hagenau,

4780 ir aller leitefrouwe,

their of-all leading-lady,

der werlde alsus geswigen ist,

to-the world thus fallen-silent is,

diu aller dœne houbetlist

who of-all tunes chief-art

versigelt in ir zungen truoc?

sealed in her tongue bore?

von der denk ich vil unde genuoc,
of her think I much and enough,

(ich meine abr von ir dœnen
(I mean but of her tunes

4785

den süezen den schœnen),
the sweet the fair),

wâ sî der sô vil næme,
where she of-them so many should-take,

wannen ir daz wunder kæme
whence to-her the wonder should-come

sô maneger wandelunge.
of-so many variation.

ich wæne Orphêes zunge,
I think Orpheus's tongue,

4790

diu alle dœne kunde,
which all tunes knew,

diu dœnete ûz ir munde.
it sounded out-of her mouth.

sît daz man der nu niht enhât,
since that one of-her now not has,

sô gebet uns eteslîchen rât!
so give us some counsel!

ein sælic man der spreche dar:
a blessed man he speak there:

4795

wer leitet nû die lieben schar?
who leads now the dear company?

wer wîset diz gesinde?
who guides this household?

ich wæne, ich sî wol vinde,
I think, I her well find,

diu die baniere fûeren sol:
who the banner lead shall:

ir meisterinne kan ez wol,
their mistress can it well,

4800

diu von der Vogelweide.

she of the Vogelweide.

hei wie diu über heide

hey how she over heath

mit hôher stimme schellet!

with high voice rings!

waz wonders sî stellet!

what wonders she sets-up!

4805 wie spæhe si organieret!

how skillfully she harmonizes!

wie si ir sanc wandelieret!

how she her song varies!

(ich meine abr in dem dône

(I mean but in the tune

dâ her von Zithêrône,

there hither from Cithæron,

dâ diu gotinne Minne

where the goddess Love

4810 gebiutet ûf und inne).

commands up and in).

diu ist dâ ze hove kamerærîn,

she is there at court chamberlain,

diu sol ir leitærinne sîn!

she shall their leader be!

diu wîset sî ze wunsche wol,

she guides them to wish well,

diu weiz wol, wâ si suochen sol

she knows well, where she seek shall

4815 der minnen melodîe.

of-the love melody.

si unde ir cumpanîe

she and her company

die müezen sô gesingen,

they must so sing,

daz sî ze fröuden bringen

that they to joys bring

ir trûren unde ir senedez klagen:

their mourning and their yearning lament:

und daz geschehe bî mînen tagen!

and that happen in my days!

4820

The Invocation

XXXII

Still unable to describe the knighting, the poet prays to Helicon, to Apollo and the Muses, for a drop of their eloquence. Yet he refuses to turn his skill to describing armor, as others have done, telling how Vulcan forged Tristan's armor and Cassandra made his clothes. Instead he entrusts Tristan to the four powers that dressed his companions. After Mass, Mark buckles sword and spurs on Tristan and exhorts him to be humble, truthful, generous, and loyal.

Nu hân ich rede genuoge

Now have I speech enough

von guoter liute fuoge

of good people's skill

gefüegen liuten vür geleit.

to-skilled people before laid.

ie noch ist Tristan umbereit

ever still is Tristan unready

ze sîner swertleite:

for his sword-taking:

ine weiz wie in bereite:

I-not know how him prepare:

der sin wil niender dar zuo;

the sense wants nowhere there to;

sone weiz diu zunge, waz si tuo,

so-not knows the tongue, what it do,

4825

al eine und âne des sinnes rât,
all alone and without the sense's counsel,

4830 von dem si ir ambet allez hât.
from which it its office all has.

waz aber nu werre in beiden,
what however now trouble to-them both,

des wil ich iuch bescheiden.
of-that will I you inform.

si zwei hât daz verirret,
them two has that confused,

daz tûsenden wirret:
which to-thousands troubles:

4835 dem man, der niht wol reden kan,
the man, who not well speak can,

kumt dem ein redegeber man,
comes to-him a speech-giving man,

im erlischet in dem munde
to-him goes-out in the mouth

daz selbe, daz er kunde.
the same, which he knew.

ich wæne, mir ist alsam geschehen:
I think, to-me is likewise happened:

4840 ich sihe und hân biz her gesehen
I see and have until now seen

sô manegen schône redenden man,
so many-a beautifully speaking man,

daz ich des niht gereden kan
that I of-it not speak can

ezn dunke mich dâ wider ein wint,
unless-it seem to-me there against a wind,

als nû die liute redende sint:
as now the people speaking are:

4845 man sprichet nû sô rehte wol,
one speaks now so right well,

daz ich von grôzem rehte sol

that I by great right shall

mîner worte nemen war

of-my words take heed

und sehen, daz si alsô sîn gevar,

and see, that they so be colored,

als ich wolte, daz si wæren

as I would, that they were

an fremeder liute mæren

in foreign people's tales

und alse ich rede geprüeven kan

and as I speech judge can

an einem anderen man.

in an other man.

Nune weiz ich wies beginne:

Now-not know I how-it begin:

mîn zunge und mîne sinne

my tongue and my senses

die enmugen mir niht ze helfe komen;

they can to-me not to help come;

mir ist von worten genomen

to-me is of words taken

enmitten ûz dem munde

in-the-midst out-of the mouth

daz selbe, daz ich kunde.

the same, which I knew.

hie zuo enweiz ich, waz ich tuo,

here to know-not I, what I do,

ich entuo daz eine dar zuo,

I unless-do the one there to,

deiswâr, daz ich noch nie getete:

truly, which I yet never did:

4850

4855

4860

mîne flêhe und mîne bete

my entreaties and my prayer

die wil ich êrste senden

them will I first send

mit herzen und mit henden

with heart and with hands

4865 hin wider ze Êlicône

thither back to Helicon

ze dem niunvalten trône,

to the ninefold throne,

von dem die brunnen diezent,

from which the springs gush,

ûz den die gâbe fliezent

out-of which the gifts flow

der worte unde der sinne.

of-the words and of-the senses.

4870 der wirt, die niun wirtinne,

the host, the nine hostesses,

Apollo und die Camênen,

Apollo and the Camenae,

der ôren niun Sirênen,

of-the ears nine Sirens,

die dâ ze hove der gâben pflegent,

who there at court of-the gifts take-care,

ir gnâde teilent unde wegent,

their grace share and weigh,

4875 als si ir der werlde gunnen,

as they of-it to-the world grant,

die gebent ir sinne brunnen

they give their senses' spring

sô vollecliche manegem man,

so fully to-many-a man,

daz sî mir einen trahen dâ van

that they me one drop there from

mit êren niemer mugen versagen.

with honor never may refuse.

und mag ouch ich den dâ bejagen,

and (if)-may also I it there gain,

4880

so behalte ich mîne stat dâ wol,

so keep I my place there well,

da man sî mit rede behalten sol.

where one it with speech keep shall.

der selbe trahen der eine

the same drop the one

der ist doch nie sô kleine,

it is yet never so small,

er enmüeze mir verrihten,

it unless-must for-me set-right,

4885

verrihtende beslihten

setting-right make-smooth

beide zungen unde sin,

both tongue and sense,

an den ich sus entrihtet bin.

in which I thus disarranged am.

diu mînen wort muoz er mir lân

the my words must it for-me let

durch den vil liechten tegel gân

through the very bright crucible go

4890

der camênischen sinne

of-the Camenaeen senses

und muoz mir diu dar inne

and must for-me them there within

ze fremedem wunder eiten,

to strange wonder smelt,

dem wunsche bereiten

to-the wish prepare

4895 als golt von Arâbe.

as gold from Arabia.

die selben gotes gâbe

the same God's gifts

des wâren Êlicônes,

of-the true Helicon,

des oberesten trônes,

of-the highest throne,

von dem diu wort enspringent,

from which the words spring,

4900 diu durch daz ôre klingent

which through the ear ring

und in daz herze lachent,

and into the heart laugh,

die rede durchliuhtec machent

the speech bright-shining make

als ein erwelte gimme,

as a chosen gem,

die geruochen mîne stimme

they deign my voice

4905 und mîne bete erhœren

and my prayer hear

oben in ir himelkœren

above in their heaven-choirs

und rehte als ich gebeten hân.

and just as I prayed have.

Nu diz lâz allez sîn getân,

Now this let all be done,

daz ich des alles sî gewert,

that I of-it all be granted,

4910 des ich von worten hân gegert,

what I of words have desired,

und habe des alles vollen hort,
and have of-it all full board,

senfte allen ôren mîniu wort,
soften to-all ears my words,

ber iegelîchem herzen schate
bear to-each heart shade

mit dem ingrûenen lindenblate,
with the deep-green linden-leaf,

gê mîner rede als ebene mite,
go my speech so evenly with,

daz ich ir an iegelîchem trite
that I to-it at each step

rûme unde reine ir strâze,
clear and clean its road,

noch an ir strâze enlâze
nor on its road leave

dekeiner slahte stoubelîn,
of-any kind little-dust,

ez enmüeze dan gescheiden sîn,
it unless-must then separated be,

und daz si niuwan ûfem klê
and that it only on-the clover

unde ûf liechten bluomen gê;
and on bright flowers go;

dannoch gewende ich mînen sin,
still turn I my sense,

sô kleine als ich gesinnet bin,
as small as I minded am,

kûme oder niemer dar an,
barely or never there on,

dar an sich also manic man
there on himself so many-a man

versuochet unde verpirset hât;
tried and stalked has;

4915

4920

4925

deiswâr, ich sol es haben rât.

truly, I shall of-it have riddance.

wan kêrte ich alle mîne kraft

for turned I all my strength

4930 ze ritters bereitschaft,

to knight's equipment,

als weizgot maneger hât getân,

as God-knows many-a-one has done,

und seite iu daz, wie Vulcân

and told you that, how Vulcan

der wîse, der mære,

the wise, the famed,

der guote listmachære,

the good art-maker,

4935 Tristande sînen halsperc,

for-Tristan his hauberk,

swert unde hosen und ander werç,

sword and hose and other work,

daz den ritter sol bestân,

which the knight shall befit,

durch sîne hende lieze gân

through his hands should-let go

schône und nâch meisterlichem site,

beautifully and after masterly custom,

4940 wie ern entwürfe unde snite,

how he-him should-devise and should-cut,

den kuonheit nie bevilte,

whom boldness never wearied,

den eber an dem schilte;

the boar on the shield;

wie erm den helm betihte

how be-for-him the helm composed

und oben dar ûf rihte

and above there on set

al nâch der minnen quâle

all after the love's torment

4945

die fiurîne strâlê,

the fiery arrow,

wie er im al besunder

how be for-him all apart

ze wunsche und ze wunder

to wish and to wonder

bereite ein und ander,

prepared one and other,

und wie mân frou Cassander,

and how my lady Cassandra,

4950

diu wîse Troierinne,

the wise Trojan-woman,

ir liste und alle ir sinne

her arts and all her senses

dar zuo hete gewant,

there to had turned,

daz sî Tristande sîn gewant

that she for-Tristan his clothing

berihete unde bereite

arranged and prepared

4955

nâch solher wîsheite

after such wisdom

sô siz aller beste

as she-it of-all best

von ir sinnen weste,

from her senses knew,

der geist ze himele, als ich ez las,

whose spirit to heaven, as I it read,

4960 von den goten gefeinet was:

by the gods fairy-gifted was:

waz hete daz iht ander kraft

what had that any other strength

dan alse ich die geselleschaft

than as I the company

Tristandes ê bereite

of-Tristan before prepared

ze sîner swertleite?

for his sword-taking?

4965 mag ich die volge von iu hân,

(if)-may I the assent from you have,

sô ist mîn wân alsô getân,

so is my belief so made,

und weiz daz wol, muot unde guot

and know that well, spirit and goods

wer zuo den zwein gerâten tuot

who to the two equipments adds

bescheidenheit und hōfschen sin,

discretion and courtly sense,

4970 diu vieriu wûrkent under in

the four work among them

als wol als ieman ander

as well as anyone other

jâ, Vulcân und Cassander,

yes, Vulcan and Cassandra,

diu zwei bereiten ritter nie

the two equipped knights never

baz ze prîse danne ouch die.

better to prize than also those.

Sît nû die vier rîcheite

4975

Since now the four richnesses

rîliche swertleite

rich sword-taking

sus kunnen geprüevieren,

thus can furnish,

so bevelhen wir in vieren

so commend we to-them four

unsern friunt Tristanden.

our friend Tristan.

die nemen in ze handen,

4980

they take him to hands,

bereiten uns den werden man,

prepare for-us the worthy man,

sît ez niht bezzer werden kan,

since it not better become can,

mit dem geziuge und mit dem snite,

with the gear and with the cut,

dâ sîne reitgesellen mite

there his riding-companions with

sô schône sint bereitet.

4985

so beautifully are prepared.

sus sî Tristan geleitet

thus be Tristan led

ze hove und ouch ze ringe,

to court and also to ring,

mit allem sînem dinge

with all his things

sînen gesellen ebengelich,

to-his companions evenly-like,

ebenziere und ebenrîch:

4990

equally-adorned and equally-rich:

ich meine abr an der wæte,

I mean but in the clothing,

die mannes hant dâ næte,

which man's hand there sewed,

niht an der an gebornen wât,

not in the in born clothing,

diu von des herzen kamere gât,

which from the heart's chamber goes,

4995 die sî dâ heizent edeln muot,

which they there call noble spirit,

diu den man wolgemuoten tuot,

which the man well-spirited makes,

und werdet lîp unde leben;

and ennobles body and life;

diu wât wart den gesellen geben

the clothing was to-the companions given

dem hêrren ungelîche.

to-the lord unlike.

5000 jâ weizgot, der muotrîche,

yes God-knows, the spirit-rich,

der êrengire Tristan

the honor-greedy Tristan

truoc sunderlichiu kleider an,

wore special clothes on,

von gebâre und von gelâze

of bearing and of manner

gezieret ûz der mâze.

adorned beyond the measure.

5005 er hetes alle an schœnen siten

he had-them all in fair manners

unde an tugenden übersniten.

and in virtues surpassed.

und iedoch an der wæte,

and yet in the clothing,

die mannes hant dâ næte,

which man's hand there sewed,

da enwas niht underscheidunge an,
there was not of-difference in,

der truoc der werde houbetman
it wore the worthy captain

5010

in allen gelîche.
to-them all alike.

sus was der muotrîche
thus was the spirit-rich

der voget von Parmenîe
the lord of Parmenie

und al sîn massenîe
and all his household

ze münster mit ein ander komen
to minster with each other come

5015

und heten messe vernomen
and had mass heard

und ouch enpfangen den segen,
and also received the blessing,

des man in dâ solte pflegen:
whiche one to-them there should give:

Marke nam dô Tristanen,
Mark took then Tristan,

sînen neven, ze handen,
his nephew, to hands,

5020

swert unde sporn stricte er im an.
sword and spurs buckled he to-him on.

»sich«, sprach er, »neve Tristan,
»see«, spoke he, »nephew Tristan,

sît dir nu swert gesegenet ist
since to-thee now sword blessed is

und sît du ritter worden bist,
and since thou knight become art,

- 5025 nu bedenke ritterlîchen prîs
now consider knightly prize
 und ouch dich selben, wer du sîs;
and also thee self, who thou be;
 dîn geburt und dîn edelkeit
thy birth and thy nobility
 sî dînen ougen vür geleit.
be to-thy eyes before laid.
 wis diemüete und wis unbetrogen,
be humble and be undeceitful,
- 5030 wis wârhaft und wis wolgezogen;
be truthful and be well-bred;
 den armen den wis iemer guot,
to-the poor to-them be ever good,
 den rîchen iemer hôchgemuot;
to-the rich ever high-spirited;
 ziere unde werde dînen lîp,
adorn and ennoble thy person,
 êre unde minne elliu wîp;
honor and love all women;
- 5035 wis milte unde getriuwe
be generous and faithful
 und iemer dar an niuwe!
and ever there in new!
 wan ûf mîn êre nim ich daz,
for upon my honor take I that,
 daz golt noch zobel gestuont nie baz
that gold nor sable suited never better
 dem spere unde dem schilte
to-the spear and to-the shield
- 5040 dan triuwe unde milte.«
than faithfulness and generosity.»

The Knighting

XXXIII

Mark gives Tristan the shield, and Tristan knights his companions in turn, teaching them humility, loyalty, and generosity; tournaments follow. The poet reflects that Tristan's joy was always joined to sorrow, for the thought of his father's death and of Morgan still living haunted him. With Rual he asks Mark for leave to go to Parmenie. Mark grants it, promising never to marry so that Tristan may be his heir, and Tristan sails home with Rual.

Hie mite bôt er im den schilt dar.

Here with offered he to-him the shield there.

er kuste in und sprach: »neve, nu var

he kissed him and spoke: »nephew, now fare

und gebe dir got durch sîne kraft

and give thee God through his might

heil ze dîner ritterschaft!

fortune to thy knighthood!

wis iemer höfsch, wis iemer frô!«

be ever courtly, be ever glad!«

5045

Tristan verrihte aber dô

Tristan invested again then

sîne gesellen an der stete,

his companions at the place,

rehte als in sîn œheim tete,

just as him his uncle did,

an swerte, an sporn, an schilte.

with sword, with spurs, with shield.

diemüete, triuwe, milte,

humility, faithfulness, generosity,

5050

die leite er iegeliches kûr

them laid he each-one's choice

mit bescheidenlîcher lêre vûr.

with discreet teaching before.

und enwart ouch dâ niht mê gebiten,
and was also there nothing more waited,

gebuhurdieret unde geriten
buburt-ridden and ridden

5055 wart dâ, zewâre deist mîn wân.
was there, truly that-is my belief

wie si aber von ringe liezen gân,
how they however from ring let go,

wie sî mit scheften stæchen,
how they with shafts should-thrust,

wie vil si der zebræchen,
how many they of-them should-break,

daz sulen die garzûne sagen;
that shall the grooms tell;

5060 die hulpen ez zesamene tragen.
they helped it together carry.

ine mag ir buhurdieren
I may their buburt-riding

niht allez becrôieren,
not all proclaim,

wan einen dienst biut ich in,
except a service offer I to-them,

des ich in sêre willic bin,
of-which I to-them sorely willing am,

5065 daz sich ir aller êre
that itself their of-all honor

an allen dingen mêre
in all things increase

und in got ritterlîchez leben
and to-them God knightly life

ze ir ritterscheft mûeze geben!
to their knighthood may give!

Treit ieman lebender stæte leit
(If)-bears anyone living constant sorrow

bî stæteclîcher sælekeit, 5075
by constant blessedness,

sô truoc Tristan ie stæte leit
so bore Tristan ever constant sorrow

bî stæteclîcher sælekeit.
by constant blessedness.

Als ich es iuch bescheiden wil:
As I it you inform will:

im was ein endelîchez zil
to-him was a final goal

gegeben der zweier dinge, 5075
given of-the two things,

leides unde linge;
of-sorrow and of-success;

wan allez daz, des er began,
for all that, which he began,

dâ lang im allerdickest an,
there succeeded to-him most-often in,

und was ie leit der linge bî,
and was ever sorrow the success by,

swie ungelîch diz jenem sî. 5080
however unlike this to-that be.

sus wâren diu zwei conterfeit,
thus were the two counterfeit,

stætiu linge und wernde leit,
constant success and lasting sorrow,

gesellet an dem einen man.
joined in the one man.

»sô helfe iu got, nu sprechet an:
»so help you God, now speak on:

5085 Tristan der hât nu swert genomen

Tristan he has now sword taken

und ist ze rîcher linge komen

and is to rich success come

mit ritterlîcher werdekeit:

with knightly worthiness:

lât hœren, welher hande leit

let hear, of-what kind sorrow

hete er bî dirre linge?«

had he by this success?«

5090 weiz got, an einem dinge,

knows God, in one thing,

daz iegelîchem herzen ie

which to-each heart ever

und ouch dem sînen nâhe gie,

and also to-the his near went,

daz ime der vater was erslagen,

that to-him the father was slain,

als er Rûâlen hôrte sagen,

as he Rual heard say,

5095 daz qual in in dem muote.

that tormented him in the spirit.

alsus was übel bî guote,

thus was ill by good,

bî linge schade, bî liebe leit,

by success harm, by joy sorrow,

eines herzen stætiu sicherheit.

of-one heart constant certainty.

ir aller jehe lît dar an,

their of-all saying lies there on,

5100 haz der lige ie dem jungen man

hatred that lies ever to-the young man

mit grœzerem ernest an,

with greater earnest on,

dan einem stündigen man.

than to-a mature man.

ob aller sîner werdekeit

above all his worthiness

sô swebete Tristande ie daz leit

so hovered to-Tristan ever the sorrow

und daz verborgene ungemach,

and the hidden discomfort,

5105

daz nieman lebender an im sach,

which no-one living on him saw,

daz im Riwalînes tât

which to-him Riwalin's death

und Morgânes leben bôt:

and Morgan's life offered:

daz leit lag ime mit sorgen an.

the sorrow lay to-him with cares on.

der sorcsame Tristan

the care-laden Tristan

5110

und sîn getriuwelîcher rât,

and his faithful counsel,

der noch von triuwen namen hât,

who still from faithfulness name has,

der sælige Foitenant,

the blessed Lieutenant,

die bereiten zehant

they prepared at-once

mit rîchem geræte,

with rich equipment,

5115

des man den wunsch dâ hæte,

of-which one the wish there had,

eine rîchliche barken:

a rich barque:

sus kâmen si vür Marken.

thus came they before Mark.

Tristan sprach: »lieber hêrre mîn,

Tristan spoke: »dear lord mine,

5120 ez sol mit iuvern hulden sîn,

it shall with your favor be,

daz ich ze Parmenîe var

that I to Parmenie fare

und neme nâch iuwerem râte war,

and take after your counsel heed,

wie unser dinc dâ sî gewant

how our matter there be turned

umbe liute und umbe lant,

about people and about land,

5125 daz ir dâ sprechet, ez sî mîn.«

which you there say, it be mine.«

der künec sprach: »neve, diz sol sîn.

the king spoke: »nephew, this shall be.

swie kûme ich dîn doch müge enbern,

however barely I thee yet may forgo,

ich wil dich dirre bete gewern.

I will thee this request grant.

var heim ze Parmenîe,

fare home to Parmenie,

5130 dû und dîn cumpanîe;

thou and thy company;

bedarft du ritterschefte mê,

(if)-needest thou of-knighthood more,

die nim, als dir ze muote stê.

it take, as to-thee to spirit stand.

nim ros, nim silber unde golt

take horses, take silver and gold

und swes dû bedürfen solt,

and whatever thou need shalt,

5135 als dû bedürfen wellest;

as thou need wilt;

und swen dû dir gesellest,
and whomever thou to-thee joinest,

dem biut ez sô mit guote,
to-him offer it so with goods,

mit geselleclîchem muote,
with companionable spirit,

daz er dîn dienest gerne sî
that he thy service gladly be

und dir mit triuwen wese bî.
and to-thee with faithfulness be by.

5140

vil lieber neve, wirb unde lebe,
very dear nephew, act and live,

als dir dîn vater lêre gebe,
as to-thee thy father teaching give,

der getriuwe Rûal, der hie stât,
the faithful Rual, who here stands,

der michel triuwe und êre hât
who great faithfulness and honor has

mit dir begangen unze her;
with thee performed until now;

5145

und sî, daz dich des got gewer,
and be, that thee of-it God grant,

daz dû dich dâ verrihtest
that thou thyself there set-right

und dîn dinc dâ beslihtest
and thy matter there settle

nâch frumen und nâch êren,
after profit and after honors,

sô soltu wider kêren:
so shalt-thou back turn:

5150

kêre wider her ze mir.
turn back hither to me.

ein dinc lob ich und leiste dir,
one thing vow I and perform to-thee,

sê mîne triuwe an dîne hant,

see my faithfulness into thy hand,

daz ich dir mîn guot und mîn lant

that I with-thee my goods and my land

5155 iemer geliche teile;

ever equally share;

und sî ez an dînem heile,

and be it in thy fortune,

daz dû mich sulest überleben,

that thou me shalt outlive,

sô sî dir allez ze eigene geben:

so be to-thee all to own given:

wan ich wil durch den willen dîn

for I will for the sake thine

5160 êlîches wîbes âne sîn,

of-wedded wife without be,

die wîle ich iemer leben sol.

the while I ever live shall.

neve, dû hâst vernomen wol

nephew, thou hast heard well

mîne bete und mînen sin.

my request and my mind.

bistû mir holt, als ich dir bin,

(if)-art-thou to-me devoted, as I to-thee am,

5165 treist dû mir herze, als ich dir trage,

(if)-bearest thou to-me heart, as I to-thee bear,

weiz got, so sul wir unser tage

knows God, so shall we our days

frôliche mit ein ander leben.

gladly with each other live.

hie mite sî dir urloup gegeben.

here with be to-thee leave given.

der megede sun, der hüete dîn!

the maiden's son, he guard thee!

und lâ dir wol bevolhen sîn
and let to-thee well commended be

5170

dîn geschefede und dîn êre!«
thy business and thy honor!«

hie enbitens ouch nimêre:
here waited-they also no-more:

Tristan und sîn friunt Rûal
Tristan and his friend Rual

die schiffeten von Kurnewal,
they sailed from Cornwall,

si unde ir massenîe,
they and their household,

5175

heim wider ze Parmenîe.
home back to Parmenie.

The Return to Parmenie

XXXIV

Rual welcomes Tristan to his father's land, gives him the towns and castles he has kept since Kanel's time and his own inheritance besides, and Floraete receives the guests with joy. The lords of Parmenie do homage to Tristan at Kanoel, yet his secret pain over Morgan never leaves him. He sets out for Britain to receive his fief from Morgan; there, told that Morgan is hunting, he has his knights arm under their cloaks and sends the baggage back.

Ob iu nu vil lieb ist vernomen
If to-you now very dear is heard

umb dirre hêrren willekomen,
about these lords' welcome,

ich sage, alse ich hân vernomen,
I tell, as I have heard,

wie sî dâ wâren willekomen.
how they there were welcome.

5180

Ir aller leitære,

Their of-all leader,

der getriuwe, der gewære

the faithful, the true

Rûal trat vor ûz an daz lant;

Rual stepped before out onto the land;

sîn hûetelîn und sîn gewant

his little-bat and his clothing

5185 leit er höfischliche dort hin dan:

laid he courteously there thither away:

Tristanden lief er lachende an,

Tristan ran he laughing at,

er kuste in und sprach: »hêrre mîn,

he kissed him and spoke: »lord mine,

gote sult ir willekomen sîn,

to-God shall you welcome be,

iuwerm lande unde mir!

to-your land and to-me!

5190 kieset, hêrre: sehet ir

perceive, lord: see you

diz schoene lant bî disem mer?

this fair land by this sea?

veste stete, starke wer

firm towns, strong defense

und manic schoene kastêl:

and many-a fair castle:

seht, daz hât iuwer vater Kanêl

see, that has your father Kanel

5195 an iuch geerbet unde brâht.

to you bequeathed and brought.

sît ir nu biderbe unde bedâht,

(if)-are you now valiant and considered,

swes iuwer ouge hie gesiht,

whatever your eye here sees,

des engât iu niemer niht:

of-it goes to-you never anything:

des bin ich iemer iuwer wer.«

of-that am I ever your warrant.«

mit diser rede sô kêrte er her

with this speech so turned he hither

5200

mit rîchem herzen unde frô;

with rich heart and glad;

vil frôliche enpfeng er dô

very gladly received he then

die ritter al besunder:

the knights all apart:

er begunde sî ze wunder

he began them to wonder

mit sînen worten sûezen

with his words sweet

5205

salûieren unde grûezen.

salute and greet.

hie mite fuorte ers ûf Kanoël.

here with led he-them onto Kanoel.

die stete unde diu kastêl,

the towns and the castles,

diu von Kanêles jâren

which from Kanel's years

in sîner pflege wâren

in his care were

5210

in allem dem lande,

in all the land,

diu gab er ûf Tristande

them gave he up to-Tristan

nâch vil getriuwelîchem site;

after very faithful custom;

und ouch diu sînen dâ mite,

and also the his there with,

5215 diu in wâren an gevallen

which to-him were on fallen

von sînen vordern allen.

from his forebears all.

waz sol der rede nu mêre?

what shall of-the speech now more?

er hete rât und êre:

he had counsel and honor:

durch daz bôt er dem hêrren rât

for that offered he to-the lord counsel

5220 als der, der rât und êre hât,

as he, who counsel and honor has,

und mit im al den sînen.

and with him all the his-ones.

daz flîzen und daz pînen

the striving and the toiling

daz er mit süezem muote

which he with sweet spirit

in allen ze guote

to-them all to good

5225 und alle wîs an in begie,

and all ways on them performed,

daz engesach mannes ouge nie.

that saw man's eye never.

Wie dô? wie ist mir sus geschehen?

How then? how is to-me thus happened?

ich hân mich selben übersehen:

I have myself self overlooked:

wâ sint nu mîne sinne?

where are now my senses?

5230 die guoten marschalkinne,

the good marshal's-wife,

die reinen, die stâten,

the pure, the constant,

mîne frouwen Floræten,

my lady Floraete,

daz ich die sus verswigen hân,

that I her thus kept-silent have,

deist niht dâ her von hove getân.

that-is not there hither from court done.

ich sol ez aber der sûezen

I shall it however to-the sweet-one

5235

bezzern unde bûezen.

better and atone.

diu hœfsche, diu guote,

the courtly, the good,

diu guote gemuote,

the good spirited,

diu werdeste, diu beste,

the worthiest, the best,

ich weiz wol, daz si ir geste

I know well, that she her guests

5240

niht eine mit dem munde enpfie;

not alone with the mouth received;

wan swâ daz wort von munde gie,

for wherever the word from mouth went,

dâ gie der sûeze wille ie vor.

there went the sweet will ever before.

ir herze daz fuor rehte enbor,

her heart it went right aloft,

als ez gevidert wære.

as-if it feathered were.

5245

si wâren vil einbære

they were very united

beidiu ir wille unde ir wort.

both her will and her word.

ich weiz wol, daz si über bort

I know well, that they over board

vil geselleclîche giengen,

very companionably went,

5250 dâ sî die geste enpfienge.

where they the guests received.

diu sælige Floræte,

the blessed Floraete,

waz fröude ir herze hæte

what joy her heart had

wider ir hêrren unde ir kint,

toward her lord and her child,

(daz kint, des disiu mære sint,

(the child, of-whom these tales are,

5255 ir sun Tristanden, den mein ich)

her son Tristan, him mean I)

entriuwen, des erkenne ich mich

in-truth, of-that recognize I myself

an manegen unde an gnuogen

by many and by enough

ir tugenden unde ir fuogen,

her virtues and her skills,

die ich von der sæligen las;

which I of the blessed-one read;

5260 daz der niht ein lützel was,

that of-it not a little was,

daz bewærte si alsô wol,

that proved she so well,

als ein wîp allerbeste sol;

as a woman very-best shall;

wan si schuof ir kinde

for she made for-her child

und sînem ingesinde

and his household

al die êre und daz gemach,

all the honor and the comfort,

daz ie ritteren geschach.

which ever to-knights happened.

[ouch wæne ich eines alsô wol,

[also think I one so well,

daz ich es niht baz wænen sol,

that I it not better think shall,

von dem höfschen Kurvenâle;

of the courtly Kurvenal;

dem enwære er zuo dem mâle

to-him were he at the time

ein willekomener Tristan,

a welcome Tristan,

ich enhân dâ keinen zwîvel an.]

I have there no doubt in.]

Hie mite sô wurden besant

Here with so were summoned

ze Parmenîe übr al daz lant

in Parmenie over all the land

die hêrren und diu hêrschaft,

the lords and the lordship,

die da heten die kraft

who there had the power

der stete und der kastêle.

of-the towns and of-the castles.

nu die ze Kanoêle

now they to Kanoel

gemeinliche kâmen,

together came,

5265

5270

gesâhen unde vernâmen

saw and heard

5275 von Tristande die wârheit,

of Tristan the truth,

als uns daz mære von im seit

as to-us the tale of him tells

und also ir selbe habet vernomen,

and as you self have heard,

dô flugen tûsent willekomen

then flew thousand welcomes

von iegelîches munde.

from each-one's mouth.

5280 liut unde lant begunde

people and land began

von langem leide erwachen

from long sorrow awaken

und sich ze fröuden machen

and themselves to joys make

ze wunderlîchem wunder.

to wondrous wonder.

si enpfîngen al besunder

they received all apart

5285 ir lêhen, ir liute unde ir lant

their fiefs, their people and their land

von ir hêrren Tristandes hant:

from their lord Tristan's hand:

si swuoren hulde und wurden man.

they swore fealty and became vassals.

hier under hete ie Tristan

here under had ever Tristan

den tougenlîchen smerzen

the secret pain

5290 verborgen in dem herzen,

bidden in the heart,

der dâ von Morgâne gie.

which there from Morgan went.

der smerze der begab in nie

the pain it left him never

weder fruo noch spâte.

neither early nor late.

alsus gieng er ze râte

thus went he to counsel

mit mâgen und mit mannen

with kinsmen and with vassals

und jach, er wolte dannen

and declared, he would thence

ze Britanje gâhen,

to Britain hasten,

sîn lêhen enpfâhen

his fief receive

von sînes vîendes hant,

from his enemy's hand,

durch daz er sînes vater lant

so that he his father's land

mit rehte hæte deste baz.

with right had the better.

diz sprach er unde tete ouch daz:

this spoke he and did also that:

er fuor von Parmenîe

he went from Parmenie

er und sîn cumpanîe

he and his company

bereitet unde gewarnet wol,

prepared and armed well,

als der man ze rehte sol,

as the man by right shall,

5295

5300

5305

der ûf angestliche tât

who on fearful deed

ernestlichen willen hât.

earnest will has.

Dô Tristan ze Britanje kam,

When Tristan to Britain came,

5310 von âventiure er dô vernam

by adventure he then heard

und hôrte wêrlîche sagen,

and heard truly say,

Morgân der herzoge rite dâ jagen

Morgan the duke should-ride there hunt

von walde ze walde.

from forest to forest.

nu hiez er îlen balde,

now bade he hurry quickly,

5315 die ritter sich bereiten

the knights themselves prepare

und under ir rocke leiten

and under their coats lay

ir halsperge unde ir dinc,

their hauberks and their gear,

und sô daz nieman keinen rinc

and so that no-one any ring

ûz dem gewande lieze gân.

out-of the clothing should-let go.

5320 nu diz geschach, diz was getân;

now this happened, this was done;

und über daz leite ie der man

and over that laid each the man

sîne reisekappen an

his traveling-cloak on

und sâzen ûf ir ors alsô.

and sat on their horses so.

ir gezoc hiezen si dô
their baggage bade they then

steteliche wider rîten
steadily back ride

5325

und niemannes bîten,
and no-one wait,

und teilten ir ritterschaft.
and divided their knighthood.

dô wart diu grœzere kraft
then was the greater force

geschicket an die widervart,
sent on the return-journey,

daz der gezoc wære bewart,
that the baggage were guarded,

5330

dâ der ûf sîne strâze gie.
where it on its road went.

dô diz geschach, dô heten die,
when this happened, then had those,

die mit Tristande kêrten hin,
who with Tristan turned thither,

wol drîzec ritter under in;
well thirty knights among them;

jene an der widerkêre
those on the return

5335

wol sehzig oder mêre.
well sixty or more.

The Death of Morgan

XXXV

Tristan finds Morgan hunting in the forest and asks for his fief. Morgan answers that everyone knows how Blanscheflur ran off with Riwalin and implies that Tristan is illegitimate. Tristan answers that Morgan killed his father and now insults his mother, and offers to prove his legitimacy in combat. When Morgan scorns him, Tristan kills him with his sword. The Bretons rise against the strangers, pursue them, and besiege them in a moated fortress.

Vil schiere wart, daz Tristan

Very soon became, that Tristan

hunde und jegere sehen began.

bounds and huntsmen see began.

die selben frâgte er mære,

the same asked he tidings,

5340 wâ der herzoge wære.

where the duke were.

die tâten ez im iesâ kunt;

they made it to-him at-once known;

und er des endes sâ zestunt

and he of-the direction straightway at-once

und vant ouch dâ vil schiere

and found also there very soon

ûf einer waltriviere

on a forest-meadow

5345 vil ritter Britûne;

many knights Breton;

den wâren pavelûne

to-them were pavilions

und hûten ûf daz gras geslagen,

and buts on the grass pitched,

dar umbe und dar in getragen
there around and there in carried

loub unde liechter bluomen vil.
leaves and of-bright flowers many.

ir hunde unde ir vederspil 5350
their bounds and their hawks

daz heten si ze handen.
that had they at hands.

die gruozen ouch Tristanden
they greeted also Tristan

und sine rotte da mite
and his troop there with

höfliche nach dem hovesite;
courteously after the court-custom;

die seiten ime ouch iesu,
they told him also at-once, 5355

Morgan ir herre rite da
Morgan their lord should-ride there

vil nahen in dem walde.
very near in the forest.

dar ilten si do balde.
thither hurried they then quickly.

da fundens ouch Morgänen
there found-they also Morgan

unde uf kastelanen 5360
and on Castilian-horses

vil rittere Britune haben.
many knights Breton halt.

nu si begunden zuo im traben,
now they began to him trot,

Morgan enpfie die geste,
Morgan received the guests,

der willen er niht weste,
whose will he not knew,

- 5365 vil gestlichen unde wol,
very hospitably and well,
 als man die geste enpfâhen sol.
as one the guests receive shall.
 sîn lantgesinde tete alsam:
his land-household did likewise:
 ir iegelicher der kam
of-them each he came
 gerant mit sînem gruoze.
running with his greeting.
- 5370 nâch diser unmuoze,
after this occupation,
 dô diz grûezen gâr geschach,
when this greeting wholly happened,
 Tristan ze Morgâne sprach:
Tristan to Morgan spoke:
 »hêrre, ich bin komen dâ her
»lord, I am come there hither
 nâch mînem lêhen unde ger,
after my fief and desire,
- 5375 daz ir mir daz hie lîhet
that you to-me that here grant
 und mir des niht verzîhet,
and from-me of-it not withhold,
 des ich ze rehte haben sol:
what I by right have shall:
 sô tuot ir höfischlich unde wol.«
so do you courteously and well.»
 Morgân sprach: »hêrre, saget mir,
Morgan spoke: »lord, tell me,
- 5380 von wannen oder wer sît ir?«
from whence or who are you?«
 Tristan sprach aber dô wider in:
Tristan spoke again then back to-him:

»von Parmenie ich bürtic bin,

»of Parmenie I native am,

und hiez mîn vater Riwalîn.

and was-called my father Riwalin.

hêrre, des erbe sol ich sîn;

lord, his heir shall I be;

ich selbe heize Tristan.«

I self am-called Tristan.«

5385

Morgân sprach: »hêrre, ir komet mich an

Morgan spoke: »lord, you come me at

mit alse unnützen mæren,

with so useless tidings,

daz sî als wæge wæren

that they as good were

verswigen, alse vür brâht.

kept-silent, as forth brought.

ich bin des kurze bedâht:

I am of-it shortly considered:

5390

soltet ir iht von mir hân,

should you anything from me have,

des wære iu schiere state getân;

of-that would-be to-you soon occasion done;

wan iu enwürre niht dar an,

for to-you should-binder not there in,

ir enwæret ein gezæme man

you unless-were a fitting man

einen iegelîchen êren,

one each to-honor,

5395

dar ir ez soltet kêren.

whither you it should turn.

wir wizen aber alle wol

we know however all well

(diu lant sint dirre mære vol),

(the lands are of-this tidings full),

in welher wîse Blanschefflor

in what way Blanschefflor

5400 mit iuwerm vater von lande fuor,

with your father from land went,

ze welhen êren ez ir kam,

to what honors it to-her came,

wie diu friuntschaft ein ende nam.«

how the love-affair an end took.«

»friuntschaft? wie meinet ir daz?»

»love-affair? how mean you that?»

»ich ensage iu nû niht vûrbaz,

»I say to-you now not further,

5405 wan diser rede der ist alsô.«

except of-this speech it is so.«

»hêrre,« sprach aber Tristan dô,

»lord,« spoke again Tristan then,

»bî disem mære erkenne ich mich:

»by this tidings recognize I myself:

ir meinet ez alsô, daz ich

you mean it so, that I

niht êliche sî geborn

not in-wedlock be born

5410 und sûle dâ mite hân verlorn

and shall there with have lost

mîn lêhen und mîn lêhenreht.«

my fief and my fief-right.«

»entriuwen, hêrre guoter kneht,

»in-truth, lord good squire,

dâ vûr hân ichz und manic man.«

there for have I-it and many-a man.«

»ir redet übel«, sprach Tristan,

»you speak ill«, spoke Tristan,

»ich wânde doch, ez wære

5415

»I thought yet, it were

gevellec unde gebære,

fitting and suitable,

swer dem man leide tæte,

whoever to-the man sorrow should-do,

daz er mit rede doch hæte

that he with speech yet had

sin und gefuoge wider in.

sense and skill toward him.

hætet ir nu fuoge unde sin,

5420

had you now skill and sense,

sô leide als ir mir habet getân,

as sorrowfully as you to-me have done,

ir möhtet mich doch rede erlân,

you might me yet speech spare,

diu niuwe swære wecket

which new grief wakes

und alte schulde recket:

and old guilt rouses:

ir sluoget mir den vater doch;

5425

you slew for-me the father yet;

hie mite endunket iuch noch

here with seems to-you still

mînes leides niht genuoc,

of-my sorrow not enough,

irn jehet, mîn muoter, diu mich truoc,

unless-you say, my mother, who me bore,

diu trüege mich kebesliche.

she should-bear me as-a-concubine.

sam mir got der rîche!

5430

so-help me God the rich!

ich weiz wol, sô manc edele man,

I know well, so many-a noble man,

des ich hie niht genennen kan,
whom I here not name can,

sîne hende mir gevalten hât;
his hands to-me folded has;

und hærens dise untât,
and had-they this misdeed,

5435 der ir dâ jehet, an mir erkant,
which you there say, in me known,

ir keiner hæte sîne hant
of-them none would-have his hand

zwischen die mîne nie geleit.
between the mine never laid.

die wizzen wol die wârheit,
they know well the truth,

daz mîn vater Riwalîn
that my father Riwalin

5440 mîne muoter an daz ende sîn
my mother at the end his

brâhte vür ein êlîch wîp:
brought as a wedded wife:

ist, daz ich daz ûf iuvern lîp
(if)-is, that I that on your life

bewæren unde bereden sol,
prove and vindicate shall,

entriuwen, daz berede ich wol.«
in-truth, that vindicate I well.»

5445 »ûz!« sprach Morgân, »in gotes haz!
»out!« spoke Morgan, »in God's hatred!

iuwer bereden waz sol daz?
your vindicating what shall that?

iuwer slac engât ze keinem man,
your blow goes to no man,

der ie ze hove reht gewan.«
who ever at court right gained.»

»diz wirt wol schîn,« sprach Tristan.

»this becomes well manifest,« spoke Tristan.

er zucte swert und rande in an,

he drew sword and ran him at,

5450

er sluog im obene hin ze tal

he struck to-him above down to valley

beidiu hirne und hirneschal,

both brain and brain-pan,

daz ez im an der zungen want.

that it to-him at the tongue stopped.

hie mite sô stach er ime zehant

here with so stabbed he to-him at-once

daz swert gein dem herzen in.

the sword toward the heart in.

5455

dô wart diu wârheit wol schîn

then became the truth well manifest

des sprichwortes, daz dâ giht,

of-the proverb, which there says,

daz schulde ligen und fûlen niht.

that guilt lie and rot not.

Morgânes cumpanjûne,

Morgan's companions,

die frechen Britûne,

the bold Bretons,

5460

die enkunden ime dâ niht gefromen

they could him there not avail

noch ze helfe im nie sô schiere komen,

nor to help to-him never so quickly come,

ern læge an dem valle.

unless-he lay at the fall.

iedoch sô wârens alle,

yet so were-they all,

als sî dô mohten, an ir wer.

as they then could, on their defense.

5465

ir wart vil schiere ein michel her:

of-them became very soon a great army:

die ungewarneten man

the unwarned men

si kâmen alle ir vînde an

they came all their enemies at

mit manlichem muote.

with manly spirit.

5470 warnunge unde huote

warning and caution

der nam dâ lützel ieman war,

of-it took there little anyone heed,

wan drungen et mit hûfen dar

but thronged just with crowds thither

und tâtens alle mit gewalt

and put-them all with force

ûz hin ze velde vür den walt.

out thither to field before the forest.

5475 Hie huop sich ein michel ruoft,

Here raised itself a great cry,

michel weinen unde wuoft.

great weeping and wailing.

alsus flouc Morgânes tôt

thus flew Morgan's death

mit maneger hande klagenôt,

with many kind lament-distress,

als obe er flücke wære.

as if he winged were.

5480 er seite leidiu mære

he told sorrowful tidings

ûf die bürge und in daz lant.

on the castles and into the land.

in dem lande flouc zehant

in the land flew at-once

niht wan daz eine klagewort:

nothing except the one lament-word:

»â noster sires, il est mort!

»ah our lord, he is dead!

welch rât gewirt des landes nuo?

what counsel becomes of-the land now?

5485

nu zieren helde, kêret zuo

now proud heroes, turn to

von steten und von vesten

from towns and from fortresses

gelônen disen gesten,

repay these guests,

des si uns ze leide haben getân!«

what they us to sorrow have done!«

sus liezens ûf ir rucke gân

thus let-they on their backs go

5490

mit stæteclichem strîte.

with constant battle.

ouch fundens alle zîte

also found-they all times

an ir gesten vollen strît.

in their guests full battle.

die kêrten ie ze maniger zît

they turned ever at many time

mit einer ganzen rotte wider

with a whole troop back

5495

und wurfen manigen dâ nider

and threw many-a-one there down

und wâren doch ie fliehende

and were yet ever fleeing

und allez wider ziehende,

and all back drawing,

dô sî dâ westen ir kraft.

when they there knew their strength.

5500 sus kâmens ûf ir ritterschaft;

thus came-they onto their knighthood;

dâ nâmens ouch herberge

there took-they also lodging

ûf einem vesten berge,

on a strong hill,

dar ûfe was ir wesen die naht.

there on was their being the night.

der nehte wart des landes maht

of-the night became of-the land might

5505 sô starc und alsô veste,

so strong and so firm,

daz si aber ir leiden geste

that they again their hateful guests

als schiere, als ez wart tagende,

as soon, as it became dawning,

mit gewalte wurden jagende

with force became hunting

und mangel nider stâchen,

and many-a-one down stabbed,

5510 den hûfen dicke brâchen

the crowds often broke

mit speren und mit swerten,

with spears and with swords,

diu dâ niht lange werten.

which there not long lasted.

dâ wâren swert unde sper

there were swords and spears

deiswâr in harte kurzer wer:

truly in very short defense:

5515 ir wart dâ manigez vertân,

of-them was there many spent,

so si in die rotte liezen gân.

when they into the troop let go.

ouch was daz lützele her

also was the little army

sô frechliche an sîner wer,

so boldly in its defense,

daz dâ vil michel schade geschach,

that there very great harm happened,

dâ man in in den hûfen brach.

where one it in the crowds broke.

die schar die wurden beider sît

the troops they became on-both sides

ze einer und ze maneger zît

at one and at many time

mit grôzem schaden überladen.

with great harm overladen.

si nâmen unde tâten schaden

they took and did harm

vil schedeliche an manegem man.

very harmfully on many-a man.

sus triben siz mit ein ander an,

thus drove they-it with each other on,

biz daz daz innere her

until that the inner army

begunde swachen an der wer,

began weaken in the defense,

wan in gienc abe und jenen zuo:

for to-them went off and to-those to:

die mërten sich spâte unde fruo

they increased themselves late and early

an ir state und an ir maht,

in their strength and in their might,

5520

5525

5530

sô daz si dannoch vor der naht
so that they still before the night

besâzen aber die geste
besieged again the guests

in einer wazzerveste,
in a water-fortress,

5535 dâ sich die geste ûz werten
where themselves the guests out defended

und sich die naht dâ nerten.
and themselves the night there saved.

sus was daz her besezen,
thus was the army besieged,

mit her al umbemezen,
with army all encompassed,

als ez beziunet wære.
as-if it fenced were.

5540 die fremeden sorgære,
the foreign sorrowers,

Tristan unde sîne man,
Tristan and his vassals,

nu wie geviengens ir dinc an?
now how began-they their matter on?

daz sage ich iu, wie ez in ergie,
that tell I to-you, how it to-them went,

wie sich ir sorge zerlie,
how itself their sorrow dissolved,

5545 wie sî von dannen kâmen,
how they from thence came,

sige an ir vînden nâmen.
victory on their enemies took.

Rual's Rescue

XXXVI

Rual follows with a hundred knights and attacks the besiegers, crying Parmenie; with Tristan's knights he routs the Bretons. So Tristan wins his father's land, lord of the fief his father never had from Morgan. But his heart is torn between Rual and Mark, and the poet concludes that he must return to Cornwall, where greater honor waits. Tristan resolves to divide himself evenly between his two fathers, for body and wealth together make a man whole.

Tristan dô der von lande schiet,

Tristan when he from land departed,

als ime sîn rât Rûal geriet,

as to-him his counsel Rual advised,

sîn lêhen dâ ze enphâhene

his fief there to receive

und iesâ wider ze gâhene,

and at-once back to hasten,

5550

sît des lac zallem mâle

since of-it lay at-every time

dem sæligen Rûâle

to-the blessed Rual

der selbe wân ze herzen ie,

the same belief to heart ever,

reht alse ez ouch Tristande ergie.

right as it also to-Tristan befell.

iedoch geriet er die geschiht

yet advised he the matter

5555

umbe Morgânes schaden niht.

about Morgan's harm not.

hundert ritter er besande

hundred knights he summoned

und kêrte nâch Tristande

and turned after Tristan

ebene unde rehte ûf sîne vart.

evenly and rightly on his way.

5560 unlanges und vil schiere ez wart,

not-long and very soon it became,

daz er ze Britanje kam,

that he to Britain came,

vil rehte er al zehant vernam,

very rightly he all at-once heard,

wie ez gevaren wære.

how it fared were.

und nâch des landes mære

and after of-the land tidings

5565 sô nam er sîner reise ein mez

so took he of-his journey a measure

ze den Britûnen ûf daz sez.

to the Bretons on the siege.

nu sî begunden nâhen,

now they began approach,

daz sî die vînde sâhen.

that they the enemies saw.

do enwart an ir rotte

then was in their troop

5570 ir keinem ze spotte

of-them none to mockery

weder nâch noch niender abe gezogen:

neither behind nor nowhere off drawn:

si kâmen alle samet geflogen

they came all together flown

mit fliegenden banieren.

with flying banners.

dâ wart michel crôieren

there was great war-crying

under ir massenîe:

among their household:

»schevelier Parmenîe!

»chevalier Parmenie!

Parmenîe schevelier!«

Parmenie chevalier!«

dâ jagete banier und banier

there chased banner and banner

schaden und ungefüere

harm and violence

durch die hûtesnüere.

through the tent-cords.

si tâten die Britûne

they drove the Bretons

durch ir pavelûne

through their pavilions

mit tœdigen wunden.

with deadly wounds.

nu die inneren begunden

now the inner-ones began

ir lantbaniere erkennen,

their land-banners recognize,

ir zeichen hœren nennen,

their ensign bear name,

si begunden ir rûm wîten,

they began their room widen,

ûz an die wîte rîten.

out onto the open ride.

Tristan lie vaste strîten gân;

Tristan let fast battle go;

5575

5580

5585

- 5590 dâ wart michel schade getân
there was great harm done
 an den lantgesellen:
on the land-companions:
 vâhen unde vellen,
catching and felling,
 slahen unde stechen,
striking and stabbing,
 daz begunde ir schar durchbrechen
that began their company break-through
- 5595 ze beiden sîten in dem her,
on both sides in the army,
 und brâhtes ouch daz ûzer wer,
and brought-them also that out-of defense,
 daz die zwô cumpanîe
that the two companies
 »schevelier Parmenîe!«
»chevalier Parmenîe!«
 sô vil geriefen unde getriben.
so much cried and drove.
- 5600 des wârens âne wer beliben:
of-it were-they without defense remained:
 under in was wer noch kêre
among them was defense nor turning
 noch keines strîtes mêre
nor of-any battle more
 wan tuschen unde fliehen,
except rushing and fleeing,
 zogen unde ziehen
drawing and pulling
- 5605 wider bürge und wider walt;
toward castles and toward forest;
 der strît der wart dâ manicvalt.
the battle it became there manifold.

ir fluht was ir meistiu wer
their flight was their greatest defense

und vür den tôt ir bestiu ner.
and against the death their best rescue.

Nu disiu schumpfentiure ergie,
Now this discomfiture befell,

diu ritterschaft sich nider lie
the knighthood itself down let

5610

und nâmen herberge sâ;
and took lodging at-once;

und die von ir gesinde dâ
and who of their household there

ze velde lâgen erslagen,
in field lay slain,

die hiezen sî ze grabe tragen.
them bade they to grave carry.

5615

jene, die dâ wunt wâren,
those, who there wounded were,

die hiezen sî ûf bâren
them bade they on biers

und kêrten wider ze lande.
and turned back to land.

hie mite sô was Tristande
here with so was to-Tristan

sîn lêhen und sîn sunderlant
his fief and his separate-land

verlihen ûz sîn selbes hant.
granted out-of his own hand.

5620

er was von dem hêrre unde man,
he was of it lord and vassal,

von dem sîn vater nie niht gewan.
from whom his father never anything gained.

sus hete er sich verrihtet

thus had he himself set-right

und al sîn dinc beslihtet:

and all his matter settled:

5625 verrihtet an dem guote,

set-right in the goods,

beslihtet an dem muote;

settled in the spirit;

sîn unreht daz was allez reht,

his wrong that was all right,

sîn swærer muot liht unde sleht.

his heavy spirit light and smooth.

er hete dô ze sîner hant

he had then to his hand

5630 sînes vater erbe und al sîn lant

of-his father inheritance and all his land

unversprochenliche unde alsô,

uncontested and so,

daz nieman in den zîten dô

that no-one in the times then

ansprâche hæte an kein sîn guot.

claim had on any his goods.

hie mite sô kêrte er sînen muot,

here with so turned he his spirit,

5635 als ime gebôt und im geriet

as to-him commanded and to-him advised

sîn cœheim, dô er von im schiet,

his uncle, when he from him departed,

hin wider ze Kurnewâle

thither back to Cornwall

und enmohte ouch von Rûâle

and could also from Rual

niht gewenden sîn gemüete,

not turn his mind,

der alsô manege güete

who so many goodness

5640

mit vaterlicher stæte

with fatherly constancy

an ime erzeiget hæte.

on him shown bad.

sîn herze daz lac starke

his heart it lay strongly

an Rûâle unde an Marke:

on Rual and on Mark:

an disen zwein was al sîn sin:

on these two was all his mind:

5645

der sin stunte in her unde hin.

the mind drove him hither and thither.

nu spræche ein sæliger man:

now should-speak a blessed man:

»der sælige Tristan

»the blessed Tristan

wie gewirbet er nû hie zuo,

how acts he now here to,

daz er in beiden rehte tuo

that he to-them both right do

5650

und lône ietwederem, also er sol?»

and reward each, as he shall?»

iuwer iegelîch der weiz daz wol,

of-you each he knows that well,

ern kan daz niemer bewarn,

he can that never avoid,

ern müeze ir einen lâzen varn

unless-be must of-them one let fare

und bî dem anderen bestân.

and by the other stay.

5655

lât hœren, wie sol ez ergân?

let hear, how shall it go?

vert er ze Kurnewâle wider,
(if)-goes he to Cornwall back,

sô leit er Parmeniê nider
so lays he Parmenie down

an aller sîner werdekeit,
in all its worthiness,

5660 und ist ouch Rûal nider geleit
and is also Rual down laid

an fröuden unde an muote,
in joys and in spirit,

an allem dem guote,
in all the goods,

von dem sîn wunne solte gân;
from which his bliss should go;

und wil er aber dâ bestân,
and (if)-wants he however there stay,

5665 sone wil er sich niht kêren
so wants he himself not turn

ze hœheren êren
to higher honors

und übergât ouch Markes rât,
and passes-over also Mark's counsel,

an dem al sîn êre stât.
on which all his honor stands.

wie sol er sich hier an bewarn?
how shall he himself here at guard?

5670 weiz got, dâ muoz er wider varn:
knows God, there must he back fare:

daz sol man ime billichen.
that shall one to-him think-right.

er sol an êren rîchen
he shall in honors grow-rich

und stîgen an dem muote,
and climb in the spirit,

wil ez sich ime ze guote
(if)-wants it itself to-him to good

und ouch ze sælden kêren;
and also to fortune turn;

er sol wol aller êren
he shall well of-all honors

billiche muoten unde gern.
fittingly aspire and desire.

wil ouch in sælde der gewern,
(if)-wants also him fortune of-it grant,

des hât si reht, daz sî daz tuo,
of-that has she right, that she that do,

wan al sîn muot der stât derzuo.
for all his spirit it stands thereto.

5675

5680

Tristan der sinnerîche
Tristan the sense-rich

der kam vil sinneclîche
he came very sensibly

sînes willen über ein,
of-his will over one,

daz er sich sînen vetern zwein
that he himself to-his fathers two

als ebene teilen wolte,
as evenly divide would,

als man in snîden solte.
as one him cut should.

sich selben teilete er enzwei
himself self divided he in-two

geliche und ebene also ein ei
alike and evenly as an egg

und gab ir ietweder daz,
and gave of-them to-each that,

5685

- 5690 daz er wiste, daz im baz
which he knew, that to-him better
 an allen sînen dingen kam.
in all his things came.
 swer nû die teile nie vernam,
whoever now the parts never heard,
 die man an ganzem lîbe hât,
which one in whole body has,
 dem sage ich, wie diu teile ergât.
to-him tell I, how the dividing goes.
- 5695 dane hât nieman zwîvel an,
there has no-one doubt in,
 zwô sache enmachen einen man:
two things make a man:
 ich meine lîp, ich meine guot.
I mean body, I mean goods.
 von disen zwein kumt edeler muot
from these two comes noble spirit
 und werltlicher êren vil.
and of-worldly honors much.
- 5700 der aber diu zwei scheiden wil,
who however the two part wants,
 sô wirt daz guot ein armuot:
so becomes the goods a poverty:
 der lîp, dem nieman rehte tuot,
the body, to-which no-one rightly does,
 der kumet von sînem namen dervan,
it comes from its name thereof,
 und wirt der man ein halber man
and becomes the man a half man
- 5705 und doch mit ganzem lîbe.
and yet with whole body.
 als habet iu von dem wîbe:
so have to-you of the woman:

ez sî man oder wîp,
it be man or woman,
 sô muoz ie guot unde lîp
so must ever goods and body
 mit gemeinlichen sachen
with common matters
 einen ganzen namen machen;
a whole name make;
 und werdents aber gescheiden,
and (if)-become-they however parted,
 sone ist niht an in beiden.
so is nothing in them both.

5710

The Farewell to Parmenie

XXXVII

Tristan holds a feast and knights Rual's two sons. He tells his vassals that Mark has made him his heir and that he will return to him, and gives his fiefs in Parmenie to Rual and his heirs, keeping in his own hand the fiefs of his vassals. The knights lament that his coming has only increased their sorrow. Rual receives his fief with grief, and Tristan leaves Parmenie with Kurvenal, while the land and Floraete mourn.

Dise rede die huop Tristan
This speech it raised Tristan
 rîche unde willeclîchen an
richly and willingly on
 und fûrderts ouch mit sinnen:
and furthered-it also with senses:
 er hiez ime gewinnen
he bade for-himself gain
 schœniu ros und edele wât,
fair horses and noble clothing,

5715

spîse und anderen rât,
food and other provision,

des man ze hôhgezîten pflît,
whicb one at bigb-feasts practices,

5720 und machete eine hôhgezît:
and made a bigb-feast:

dar ladete er unde besande
thitber invited he and summoned

die besten von dem lande,
the best of the land,

an den des landes kraft dô stuont;
on whom of-the land strengtb then stood;

die tâten, als die friunde tuont,
they did, as the friends do,

5725 und kâmen, alse in wart geseit.
and came, as to-them was said.

nû was ouch Tristan bereit
now was also Tristan ready

mit allen sînen dingen.
with all his things.

er gap zwein jungelingen,
he gave to-two youths,

sînes vater Rûâles sînen, swert,
of-his father Rual's sons, sword,

5730 wan er ir ze erben hete gegert
for he of-them to heirs had desired

nâch ir vater Rûâle.
after their father Rual.

und swaz er zuo dem mâle
and whatever he at the time

ze ir wurde und zuo ir êren
to their worth and to their honors

sîner koste mohte kêren,
of-his cost could turn,

dâ hete er spâte unde fruo 5735
there had he late and early

als inneclîchen willen zuo,
so inward will to,

als ob si wæren sîniu kint.
as if they were his children.

nu daz si ritter worden sint
now that they knights become are

und zwelf gesellen mit in zwein,
and twelve companions with them two,

nu was der zwelf gesellen ein 5740
now was of-the twelve companions one

Kurvenal der hovelîche.
Kurvenal the courtly.

Tristan der tugenderîche
Tristan the virtue-rich

nam sîne bruoder an die hant,
took his brothers by the hand,

wan ez ime ze höfscheit was gewant,
for it to-him to courtesy was turned,

und fuorte sî bi handen dan. 5745
and led them by hands away.

sîne mâge und sîne man
his kinsmen and his vassals

und alle, die dâ wâren
and all, who there were

von sinnen oder von jâren
of senses or of years

oder aber von in beiden
or else of them both

betrehtic unde bescheiden, 5750
thoughtful and discreet,

die wurden alle zehant

they were all at-once

ze hove geladet unde besant.

to court invited and summoned.

nu hêrre, die sint alle dâ.

now lord, they are all there.

Tristan stuont ûf vor in sâ:

Tristan stood up before them at-once:

5755 »ir hêrren alle«, sprach er ze in,

»you lords all«, spoke he to them,

»den ich iemer gerne bin

»to-whom I ever gladly am

mit triuwen und mit durnehtekeit

with faithfulness and with integrity

an allem dienste bereit,

at all service ready,

als verre also ich iemer kan,

as far as I ever can,

5760 mîne mâge und mîne liebe man,

my kinsmen and my dear vassals,

von der genâden ich ez hân,

from whose grace I it have,

swaz mir got êren hât getân,

whatever to-me God honors has done,

von iuwerre helfe hân ich mich

by your help have I myself

verrihtet alles, des ich

set-right in-all, which I

5765 in mînem herzen gerte.

in my heart desired.

swie mich es got gewerte,

however me of-it God granted,

sô weiz ich doch wol, daz ez ie
so know I yet well, that it ever

von iuwerre frumede vollegie.
from your furtherance was-accomplished.

waz mag ich nu mære sagen?
what may I now more say?

ir habet in disen unmangen tagen
you have in these not-many days

5770

iuwer êre und iuwer sælekeit
your honor and your blessedness

sô manege wîs an mich geleit,
so many ways on me laid,

daz ich des keinen zwîvel hân,
that I of-it no doubt have,

disiu werlt diu enmüeze ê zergân,
this world it must before perish,

ê ir mir iemer keine zît
before you to-me ever any time

5775

mînes willen wider gesât.
of-my will against say.

friunt unde man und alle die,
friends and vassals and all those,

die durch mînen willen hie
who for my sake here

oder durch ir selber tugende sîn,
or for their own virtue are,

nu lâzet iu die rede mîn
now let to-you the speech mine

5780

niht sære missevallen;
not sorely displease;

ich künde und sage iu allen,
I announce and say to-you all,

als Rûal, mîn vater, der hie stât,
as Rual, my father, who here stands,

gesehen und ouch gehœret hât,
seen and also heard has,

5785 daz mir mîn œheim sîn lant
that to-me my uncle his land

gesetzt hât in mîne hant
set has into my hand

und wil ouch durch den willen mîn
and will also for the sake mine

êliches wîbes âne sîn,
of-wedded wife without be,

durch daz ich sîn erbe sî,
so that I his heir be,

5790 und wil, daz ich im wone bî,
and wants, that I to-him dwell by,

swâ er sî oder swar er var.
wherever he be or whither he fare.

nu hân ich mich bewegen dar
now have I myself resolved there

und stât mir al mîn muot dar zuo,
and stands to-me all my spirit there to,

daz ich al sînen willen tuo
that I all his will do

5795 und wider zuo im kêre.
and back to him turn.

mîn urbor und mîn êre,
my revenue and my honor,

die ich in disen landen hân,
which I in these lands have,

die wil ich lîhen unde lân
them will I grant and leave

mînem vater Rûâle,
to-my father Rual,

- ob mirz ze Kurnewâle 5800
if to-me-it in Cornwall
- iht anders danne wol ergê,
anything otherwise than well go,
- sweder ich sterbe oder dâ bestê,
whether I die or there stay,
- daz ez sîn erbelêhen sî.
that it his hereditary-fief be.
- sô stânt ouch sîne süne hie bî
so stand also his sons here by
- und mit im ander sîniu kint; 5805
and with him other his children;
- die aber sîn erben vûrbaz sint,
who however his heirs further are,
- die haben alle reht dar an.
they have all right there in.
- mîne man und mîne dienstman,
my vassals and my servants,
- diu lêhen über allez lant
the fiefs over all land
- diu wil ich haben ze mîner hant 5810
them will I have to my hand
- al mîniu jâr und mîne tage.«
all my years and my days.»
- hie wart grôz jâmer unde klage
here was great misery and lament
- under aller dirre ritterschaft;
among all this knighthood;
- si wurden alle unherzhaft,
they became all disheartened,
- ir muot, ir trôst was aller hin: 5815
their spirit, their comfort was altogether gone:
- »â hêrre,« sprâchens under in,
»ah lord,« spoke-they among them,

»nu wære uns michel baz geschehen,

»now would-be to-us much better happened,

und hæte wir iuch nie gesehen;

and had we you never seen;

sone wære ouch dises leides niht,

so would-be also of-this sorrow nothing,

5820 daz uns nû von iu geschiht.

which to-us now from you happens.

hêrre, unser trôst und unser wân,

lord, our comfort and our belief,

der was alsô hin zuo iu getân,

it was so thither to you done,

uns wære ein leben an iu gegeben:

to-us were a life in you given:

nein leider unser aller leben,

no alas our of-all life,

5825 daz wir ze fröuden solten haben,

which we to joys should have,

daz ist erstorben unde begraben,

that is died and buried,

swanne ir von hinnen kêret;

whenever you from hence turn;

hêrre, ir habt uns gemêret

lord, you have to-us increased

und niht geminret unser leit.

and not diminished our sorrow.

5830 unser aller sælekeit

our of-all blessedness

diu was ein lützel ûf gestigen

it was a little up risen

und ist nu wider nider gesigen.«

and is now again down sunk.«

ich weiz ez wârez alse den tôt,

I know it true as the death,

wie starc ir aller klagenôt
how strong their of-all lament-distress

und swie grôz ir swære
and how great their grief

von disem mære wære:
from this tidings were:

Rûal, dem ez ze guote ergienc,
Rual, to-whom it to good went,

der grôze frume dâ von enpfienç
who great profit there from received

und michel êre an guote,
and great honor in goods,

daz ez im in dem muote
that it to-him in the spirit

unsanfter danne in allen tete.
more-harsbly than to-them all did.

er enpfienç ein lêhen an der stete,
he received a fief at the place,

weiz got, daz er dekeinez nie
knows God, that he any never

mit solhem jâmer enpfie.
with such misery received.

Nu Rûal unde sîniu kint
Now Rual and his children

belêhent unde geerbet sint
enfeoffed and made-beirs are

von ir hêrren Tristandes hant,
from their lord Tristan's hand,

Tristan ergab liute unde lant
Tristan gave-over people and land

gote unde fuor von lande.
to-God and went from land.

5835

5840

5845

5850 ouch kêrte mit Tristande

also turned with Tristan

Kurvenal sîn meister dan.

Kurvenal his master away.

Rûal und ander sîne man,

Rual and other his vassals,

daz lantliut al gemeine,

the land-folk all together,

obe ir klage iht kleine

whether their lament at-all small

5855 unde ir herzeswære

and their heart's-grief

nâch ir trûthêrren wære?

after their dear-lord were?

entriuwen, daz verweiz ich wol.

in-truth, that know I well.

Parmenîe daz was vol

Parmenie that was full

klage unde klagemære:

of-lament and lament-tales:

5860 ir klage was sagebære.

their lament was tellable.

diu marschalkîn Floræte,

the marshal's-wife Floraete,

diu triuwe und êre hæte,

who faithfulness and honor had,

diu leite marter an ir lîp,

she laid torment on her body,

als mit allem rehte ein wîp,

as with all right a woman,

der got ein gerehtez leben

to-whom God a righteous life

an wîbes êren hât gegeben.

in woman's honors has given.

5865

